Draft

Swipe left to see featured music and videos.

Swipe up on the screen to explore new and recommended music.

Add music to iPhone and listen offline

In the Music app 🎵, Apple Music subscribers can add and download songs and videos from Apple Music. You can stream music you add to iPhone when you have an internet connection. To play music when you're not connected to the internet, you must first download it.

Note: You can't add and download music in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article About Apple Music Voice.

Add music from Apple Music to your library

Do any of the following:

- Touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then tap Add to Library.

- When viewing the contents of an album or playlist, tap ⊕ near the top of the screen to add the album or playlist, or tap •••, then tap Add to Library to add individual songs.

- On the Now Playing screen, tap •••, then tap Add to Library.

To delete music from the library, touch and hold the song, album, playlist, or music video, then tap Delete from Library.

Music you add to iPhone is also added to other devices if you're signed in to the iTunes Store and App Store using the same Apple ID and have Sync Library turned on (go to Settings 🖼️ > Music, then turn on Sync Library).

Add music to a playlist

1. Touch and hold an album, playlist, song, or music video.

2. Tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.

Download music from Apple Music to your iPhone

*   *Download a song, album, or playlist:* Touch and hold music you've added to your library, then tap Download.

    After you've added a playlist or album, you can also tap ⬇️ at the top of the screen.

    Note: You must turn on Sync Library to download music from Apple Music to your library (go to Settings 🖼️ > Music, then turn on Sync Library).

*   *Always download music:* Go to Settings > Music, then turn on Automatic Downloads.

    Songs you add are automatically downloaded to iPhone.

*   *See download progress:* On the Library screen, tap Downloaded Music, then tap Downloading.

Note: If the music you're downloading is available in Dolby Atmos, the Dolby button 🔲◀ appears next to the item, and you can download it either in Dolby Atmos or in stereo. To download music in Dolby Atmos when available, go to Settings 🖼️ > Music, then turn on Download in Dolby Atmos. See Listen to Dolby Atmos music on iPhone.

Manage storage space

*   *Free up music storage:* If iPhone is low on storage space, you can automatically remove downloaded music that you haven't played in a while. Go to Settings 🖼️ > Music > Optimize Storage.

*   *Remove music and videos stored on iPhone:* Touch and hold a song, album, playlist, music video, TV show, or movie that you've downloaded. Tap Remove, then tap Remove Downloads.

    The item is removed from iPhone, but not from iCloud Music Library.

*   *Remove all songs or certain artists from iPhone:* Go to Settings > Music > Downloaded Music, tap Edit, then tap ➖ next to All Songs or the artists whose music you want to delete.

Choose cellular data options for Music

Go to Settings ⚙ > Music, turn on Cellular Data, then do any of the following:

- Turn Download over Cellular on or off.

- Tap Audio Quality, turn on Lossless Audio, then tap Cellular Streaming to choose a setting (None, High Efficiency, High Quality, Lossless, or High-Resolution Lossless).

  High Quality, Lossless, and High-Resolution Lossless use significantly more cellular data than High Efficiency, which may incur additional charges from your cellular carrier. Songs may also take longer to start playing.

See recommended music on iPhone

In the Music app 🎵, Listen Now helps you play and discover your favorite albums, playlists, interviews, and personal mixes, based on your taste.

Note: Not all features are available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article About Apple Music Voice.
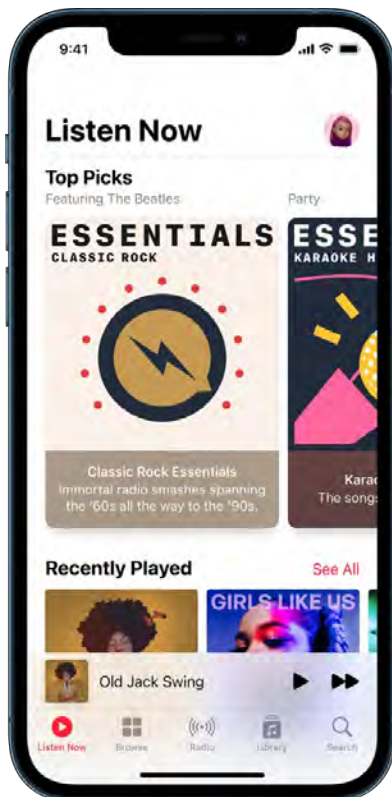
Select your favorite genres and artists

When you first tap Listen Now, you're asked to tell Apple Music about your preferences. Apple Music uses these preferences when recommending music.

1. Tap the genres you like (double-tap those you love, and touch and hold the genres you don't care for).

2. Tap Next, then do the same with the artists that appear.

To add a specific artist who isn't listed, tap Add an Artist, then enter the artist's name.

Play music

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap a playlist or album.

2. Tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle the playlist or album.

You can also touch and hold a playlist or album, then tap Play.

Play songs from an artist's catalog

Go to an artist page, then tap ⏵ next to the artist's name.

The Music app 🎵 plays songs from the artist's entire catalog, mixing hits and deep cuts.

Tell Apple Music what you love

Do any of the following:

- Touch and hold an album, playlist, or song, then tap Love or Suggest Less Like This.

- On the Now Playing screen, tap •••, then tap Love or Suggest Less Like This.

Telling Apple Music what you love and dislike improves future recommendations.

Rate music in your library

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Music.

2. Turn on Show Star Ratings.

3. In Music, touch and hold a song in your library, tap Rate Song, then choose a rating from one to five stars.

Song ratings sync to all devices that use the same Apple ID.

This option appears only if you already have star ratings from a synced library on your device.

Tell Apple Music to ignore your listening habits

If you don't want your followers on Apple Music to see any of the music you play, follow these steps.

1. Go to Settings 🌐 > Music.

2. Turn off Use Listening History.

Turning off your listening history impacts new music recommendations and the contents of Replay playlists.

Listen to radio on iPhone

In the Music app 🎵, you can listen to Apple Music radio in the Radio tab. Apple Music radio features three world-class radio stations (Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, and Apple Music Country), the latest music from a variety of genres, and exclusive interviews. You can also listen to featured stations that have been created by music experts, and create your own custom stations from songs or artists you choose.

Listen to Apple Music radio

Tap Radio, then tap one of the currently playing Apple Music radio stations. No subscription is required to listen to Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, or Apple Music Country.

Note: Because Apple Music radio stations are live radio, you can't rewind or skip songs.

Listen to your favorite music genre

1. Tap Radio, then tap a genre listed below More to Explore.

2. Tap a featured station.

Create a station

You can create a radio station based on a particular artist or song. Chances are, if you like that artist or song, you'll like the music the station plays.

1. Touch and hold an artist or song.

2. Tap Create Station.

To create a station in Now Playing, tap •••, then tap Create Station.

Search for music on iPhone

Using Search in the Music app 🎵, you can quickly browse through music categories, see recent searches, and search Apple Music or your library.

Note: Not all features are available in the [Apple Music Voice Plan](#). For more information, see the Apple Support article [About Apple Music Voice](#).

---

1. Tap Search, then do any of the following:

   - Tap a category such as Pop or Fitness.

   - Tap the search field, then tap something you recently chose while searching—a song or artist, for example.

   - Tap the search field, tap Apple Music, then enter a song, artist, album, playlist, radio show or episode, station, video, category, curator, record label, or profile.

   - Tap the search field, tap Your Library, then enter a song, album, playlist, artist, video, compilation, or composer.

2. Tap a result to play it.

You can search for a song in Apple Music based on its lyrics. In the search field, enter a few of the words you remember to find a song.

🎤 **Siri:** Say something like: "Play the song with the lyrics" and then say a key phrase from the lyrics. [Learn how to ask Siri](#).

Explicit lyrics and lyrics search aren't available in all countries or regions.

Create playlists on iPhone

In the Music app 🎵, you can organize music into playlists that you can share with your friends.

Note: You can't create playlists in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article About Apple Music Voice.
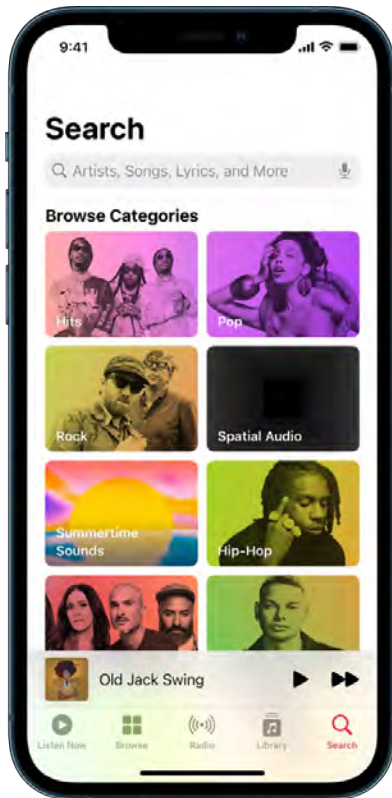

Create playlists to organize your music

1. To create a new playlist, do any of the following:

   - Tap Library, tap Playlists, then tap New Playlist.

   - Touch and hold a song, album, or playlist; tap Add to a Playlist; then tap New Playlist.

   - On the Now Playing screen, tap •••, tap Add to a Playlist, then tap New Playlist.

2. To more easily identify the playlist later, enter a name and description.

3. To give your playlist cover art, tap 📷, then take a photo or choose an image from your photo library.

4. To add music to the playlist, tap Add Music, then tap Listen Now, Browse, Library, or the search field.

5. Choose or search for music, then tap ⊕ to add it to the playlist.

💡 **Tip:** If you want to add songs to your library when you add them to a playlist, go to Settings 🖼️ > Music, then turn on Add Playlist Songs.

Edit a playlist you created on iPhone

Tap the playlist, tap •••, tap Edit, then do any of the following:

- *Add more songs:* Tap Add Music, then choose music.

  You can also touch and hold an item (song, album, playlist, or music video), tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.

- *Delete a song:* Tap ⊖, then tap Delete. Deleting a song from a playlist doesn't delete it from your library.

- *Change the song order:* Drag ≡ next to a song.

Changes you make to your music library are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on in Music settings. If you're not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your music library the next time you [sync with your computer](#).

Delete a playlist

Touch and hold the playlist, then tap Delete from Library.

You can also tap the playlist, tap •••, then tap Delete from Library.

See what your friends are listening to

When you're an Apple Music subscriber, you can see music your friends are listening to by following them. You can also see the playlists they've shared. Likewise, your followers can see your shared playlists and the music you're listening to. You see this information on your profile screen in the Music app 🎵.

Note: Not all features are available in the [Apple Music Voice Plan](#). For more information, see the Apple Support article [About Apple Music Voice](#).

Create a profile

When you first open Music, you're asked to set up a profile and start following friends. If you skipped this step, you can set up a profile at any time.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap 👤.

2. Tap Start Sharing with Friends.

   Friends can now follow you.

View your profile

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap 🙂 or your profile picture.

2. Tap View Profile at the top of the screen.

Follow your friends

There are several ways to follow people:

- Add friends when you set up your profile.

- After you set up your profile, swipe to the bottom of the profile screen, tap Follow More Friends, then tap Follow next to those you want to follow.

  You can follow friends who are in your contacts list and who use Apple Music.

- On the profile screen, touch and hold a profile picture, then tap Follow.

- Tap Search, enter a friend's name, tap it in the results, then tap Follow.

  Note: Your friends must have a profile for you to find them using search.

To see the people you're following and those who follow you, open the profile screen, then swipe up.

If a profile picture has a lock on it, you need to ask that person to follow them. After your request is accepted, you see the person's shared playlists and the music they're listening to.

Respond to follow requests

You can allow everyone to follow you, or just people you choose. You receive follow requests only if you choose who can follow you.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap 🙂 or your profile picture.

2. Tap View Profile.

3. Tap Edit, then tap People You Approve if you want to be followed only by people you choose.

4. Tap Follow Requests, then accept or decline the requests.

You may receive follow requests in other ways—as a link in an email or a text message, for example. To accept, tap the link.

Stop following and block followers

Stop following and block followers

- *Stop following:* Touch and hold the profile picture of a person you follow, then tap Unfollow.

- *Block followers:* Touch and hold a profile picture, then choose Block.

  People you block won't see your music or be able to find your profile. They can still listen to your shared playlists if they've added them to their library.

### Share music with followers

By default, your followers see the playlists you create, but you can choose not to share some playlists.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap 👤 or your profile picture.

2. Tap View Profile.

3. Tap Edit, then turn playlists on or off.

4. Drag ≡ to reorder them.

Your followers will see the playlists you create on your profile unless you turn off those playlists you don't want to share. You can turn off this option when you create a playlist or later, when you edit the playlist.

To share playlists with people who don't follow you, touch and hold a playlist, then tap Share Playlist.

Note: If you make changes to music you share—edit or stop sharing a playlist, for example—those changes are reflected on your followers' devices.

Hide music from your followers

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap 👤 or your profile picture.

2. Tap View Profile.

3. Touch and hold the playlist or album (below Listening To).

4. Tap Hide from Profile.

The listening history for this item won't appear in your profile or be visible to the people who follow you. If you don't want your followers to see any of the music you listen to, tap Edit on the profile screen, then turn off Listening To at the bottom of the screen.

Note: It may take up to 10 minutes before music you hide is no longer visible to your followers.

See what others are listening to

Tap Listen Now, then do any of the following:

- *See what your friends are listening to:* Scroll down to Friends Are Listening To, then tap an item to play it.

- *Listen to a mix of songs your friends are listening to:* Swipe left on Made For You, then tap Friends Mix.

- *See what a follower or person you follow is listening to:* Tap ⊙ or your profile picture, then tap View Profile. Tap a person's profile picture to see shared playlists and music they're listening to. You also see their followers and the people they follow.

Share your profile

You can share your profile using email, Messages, or another app you choose.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap ⊙ or your profile picture.

2. Tap View Profile.

3. Tap •••, tap Share, then choose a sharing option.

You can also share the profile of anyone you follow, or who follows you.

Report a concern

If you have a concern about a follower, touch and hold their profile picture, then tap Report a Concern.

Use Siri to play music on iPhone

You can use Siri to control music playback in the Music app 🎵.

Activate Siri, then make your request. Siri supports a wide variety of commands:

- *Play Apple Music:* You can play any song, artist, album, playlist, or station. Say, for example, "Play 'Old Jack Swing' by Georgia Anne Muldrow" or "Play James Blake." Siri can also play popular songs from different genres or years. Say "Play the top songs from 1990." You can also play music on AirPlay 2-enabled devices in a specific room. Say something like "Play the latest album by St. Vincent in the living room."

- *Let Apple Music be your personal DJ:* Say something like "Play my Chill Mix" or "Play something I like."

- *Add music from Apple Music to your library:* Say, for example, "Add 'Take My Breath' by The Weeknd to my library." Or while playing something, say "Add this to my library." (Apple Music subscription required. Not available with Apple Music Voice.)

- *Add a song or album to a playlist:* While playing a song, say something like "Add this song to my Workout playlist" or "Add this album to my Sunday Morning playlist."

- *Find out more about the current song:* Say "What's playing?", "Who sings this song?", or "Who is this song by?"

  💡 **Tip:** You can also identify a song playing on or near iPhone by adding the Music Recognition control to Control Center. Go to Settings 🔘 > Control Center, then tap ➕ next to Music Recognition. With a song playing, open Control Center, then tap 🔘.

- *Play songs based on their lyrics:* Say "Play the song with the lyrics" and then say a key phrase from the lyrics.

Learn how to ask Siri.

Siri can also help you find music in the iTunes Store. See Get music, movies, and TV shows in the iTunes Store on iPhone.

Listen to music with Apple Music Voice on iPhone

With iOS 15.2, Apple offers the Apple Music Voice Plan, a subscription option for Apple Music designed around Siri. Using just your voice, you can access millions of songs, tens of thousands of playlists (including hundreds of new mood and activity playlists), personalized mixes, genre stations, and Apple Music Radio.

In addition to streaming music from Apple Music, you can play music you purchased from the iTunes Store and music you've synced to iPhone. You can also stream music with AirPlay, play music using Home Sharing, and search the Apple Music library and your music library.

Note: Not all features are available in the Apple Music Voice Plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article About Apple Music Voice.

Subscribe to Apple Music Voice

You can subscribe to Apple Music Voice when you first open the Music app 🎵.

As an Apple Music Voice subscriber, you can play music on all your devices that have Siri turned on, including HomePod mini, AirPods, or any other Apple device, and when using CarPlay.

💡 **Tip:** If you want to preview Apple Music Voice for a few days, say "Hey Siri, start Apple Music Voice."

New subscribers can start a trial and cancel at any time. If you end your Apple Music Voice subscription, you can no longer stream Apple Music songs.

Play music with Apple Music Voice

To play music with Apple Music Voice, just say "Hey Siri," then make your request:

- "Play 'enough for you' by Olivia Rodrigo"

- "Play Apple Music Country"

- "Play cool jazz"

- "Play the dinner party playlist"

- "Play a playlist to help me relax"

- "Play more like this"

To see Siri suggestions created just for you, open the Music app 🎵, tap Listen Now, then swipe through the suggestions below Just Ask Siri. Say "Hey Siri," then speak the suggestion or tap to play it.

Play music you recently listened to

Open the Music app 🎵, tap Listen Now, then tap an item. Playlists and albums play in their original order.

Play purchased and synced music

You can play music you purchased from the iTunes Store as well as music you synced to your iPhone from a computer.

Open the Music app 🎵, tap Library, tap a category such as Playlists, Artists, or Albums, then tap an item.

To play music from a Home Sharing library, tap Library, tap Home Sharing, then tap a library.

Change the way music sounds on iPhone

Change the way music sounds on iPhone with EQ, volume limit settings, and Sound Check.

- *Choose an equalization (EQ) setting:* Go to Settings 🔘 > Music > EQ.

- *Normalize the volume level of your audio:* Go to Settings > Music, then turn on Sound Check.

News

Get started with News on iPhone

The News app 📰 collects all the stories you want to read, from your favorite sources, about the topics that interest you most. To personalize News, you can choose from a selection of publications (called *channels*) and topics such as Entertainment, Food, and Science.

You need a Wi-Fi or cellular connection to use News.

The more you read, the better News understands your interests. Siri learns what's important to you and suggests stories you might like. You can also receive notifications about important stories from channels you follow.

You can also subscribe to Apple News+, which includes hundreds of magazines, popular newspapers, and premium digital publishers.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions.

Personalize your news

When you follow a channel or topic, related stories appear more often in the Today feed, and the channel or topic appears in the Following tab.

1. Open News for the first time, tap Following, then tap ⊕ next to channels and topics you want to follow.

   If there's a channel or topic that you don't want to appear in your feed, touch and hold it, then choose Block Channel, Block Topic, or Stop Suggesting.

   When you block a channel or topic, its stories don't appear in the Today feed and widgets. To see the channels and topics you've blocked, tap Following > Blocked Channels & Topics.

   Note: When you browse Top Stories and other areas that feature stories curated by Apple News editors, placeholders may appear for stories from channels you blocked. See Follow, unfollow, block, and unblock channels and topics.

2. Tap Discover Channels at the bottom of the screen, then tap ⊕ for each channel you want to follow.

To stop following a channel or topic, swipe it to the left, then tap Unfollow.

To easily follow specific channels and topics, tap Search, enter the channel or topic's name in the search field, then tap ⊕ in the results below.

Get notifications

Some channels you follow may send notifications about important stories.

1. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.

2. Turn on notifications for your preferred channels.

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can get notifications when new issues are available. If you turn on Apple News Today (below Alerts from Apple News), you receive a link to the show notes associated with an episode of Apple News Today, when you listen to that episode.

Receive Apple News newsletters

You can choose to receive newsletters in your email inbox from Apple News editors. Newsletters feature top stories, personalized based on your interests.

1. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email.

2. Swipe to the bottom of the screen, then turn on Apple News Newsletter.

   If you subscribe to Apple News+, the newsletter also highlights new issues of your favorite magazines.

To stop receiving newsletters, return to the Notifications & Email screen, then turn off Apple News Newsletter.

Note: Personalized newsletters aren't available in all countries or regions.

See stories only from the channels you follow

Go to Settings 🎛 > News, turn on Restrict Stories in Today, then confirm your choice.

Note: Restricting stories significantly limits the variety of stories that appear in the Today feed and all other feeds. For example, if you restrict stories and follow only one entertainment-related channel, your Entertainment topic feed will contain stories only from that channel. When you restrict stories, you don't see Top Stories and Trending Stories.

Use News widgets on iPhone

You can easily see the day's top and trending stories from the News app 📰, as well as stories about a topic of your choosing, just by tapping the Today or Topic widget.

Access stories from News widgets

In the Today or Topic widget, tap a story headline to open the story.

See Add widgets on iPhone.

See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone

The Today feed in the News app ⬛ presents top stories selected by Apple News editors, the best stories from the channels and topics you follow, and stories and issues from Apple News+. The Today feed also includes stories suggested by Siri, trending stories that are popular with other News readers, and more. Depending on your location, the Today feed can also include Apple News Today audio briefings, and local news and weather forecasts.

Note: Apple News Today audio briefings and local news and weather forecasts aren't available in all countries or regions.

Access stories in the Today feed

- *Read more stories within a group:* Tap the arrow at the bottom of the group.

- *Play a video:* Tap ▶ in the thumbnail.

- *Get newer stories:* Pull down to refresh the Today feed with the latest stories.

Follow, unfollow, block, and unblock channels and topics

You can influence what appears in the Today feed by following and blocking channels and topics.

1. Do any of the following:

   - *Open a channel feed:* Touch and hold a story, tap the channel name, then tap Go to Channel. Or tap a story in the Today feed, then tap the channel name at the top of the story.

   - *Open a topic feed:* Tap the topic title—Movies or Travel, for example.

2. At the top of the feed, do any of the following:

   - *Follow:* Tap ⊕.

   - *Unfollow:* Tap ⊙, then tap Unfollow Channel or Unfollow Topic.

   - *Block:* Tap ⊙, then tap Block Channel or Block Topic.

   - *Unblock:* Tap ⊙, then tap Unblock Channel or Unblock Topic.

Note: When you browse Top Stories and other areas that feature stories curated by Apple News editors, placeholders may appear for stories from channels you blocked. To read a story from a blocked channel, tap Show Story Anyway.

Stop suggesting specific channels and topic groups in the Today feed

Suggested channels and topic groups may appear in the Today feed, but you can stop these suggestions.

1. Tap Today.

2. Tap ⊙ in a channel or topic group, then tap Stop Suggesting.

The channel or topic isn't blocked, but News stops displaying the story group in Today.

Tell News what kind of stories you prefer

1. Tap Today.

2. Tap ⊙ below a headline, then tap Suggest More or Suggest Less.

Read stories in News on iPhone

You can read and share the stories in the News app 🗞 on iPhone.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions.

Read a story

Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, you have these options:

- *Read the next story:* Tap ➔ in the lower right of the screen or swipe left.

- *Read the previous story:* Tap ← in the lower right of the screen or swipe right.

- *Return to the list of stories:* Swipe from the left edge.

- *Tell News what stories you prefer:* When viewing a story that's not part of an Apple News+ issue, tap 👍 or 👎 at the bottom of the story. Your feedback is taken into account for future recommendations.

  If you're reading a story in an Apple News+ issue, tap ⊙, then tap Suggest More or Suggest Less.

- *Change the text size:* Tap ᴀA, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. (Not available in all channels.)

- *Share a story:* Tap ⊙, tap Share Story, then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

- *Report a concern:* If you believe that a story you're viewing is mislabeled, inappropriate, offensive, or doesn't display properly, tap ⊙, then tap Report a Concern.

In Apple News+ issues in PDF format, the Suggest More, Suggest Less, Save Story, and Report a Concern options aren't available. See Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone.

Read stories shared with you

When a friend shares stories with you using the Messages app, you can easily find them in the Shared with You section in Apple News. (News must be turned on in Settings ⚙ > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.)

1. In the News app, tap Following.

2. Tap Shared with You, then do any of the following:

   - Tap a shared story to read it in News.

   - Tap the name of the person who shared a story to reply to them in the Messages app. You can also reply while reading the story—tap the name shown below the channel's logo.

Listen to Apple News Today on iPhone

In the News app 📰, you can listen to Apple News Today, an audio briefing of the day's top stories hosted by Apple News editors. With an Apple News+ subscription, you can also listen to audio versions of select Apple News+ stories.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions.

Play Apple News Today

1. Tap 🎧, then tap an episode of Apple News Today.

   Apple News Today briefings also appear in the Today feed.

2. For more audio controls, tap the mini player at the bottom to open the full-screen player.

   See Listen to audio stories.

3. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.

   To close the full-screen player, tap •••, then tap Close Audio Player. To close the mini player, touch and hold the player, then tap Close Audio Player.

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, a preview of an Apple News+ audio story plays when the briefing concludes.

Apple News+

Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone

In the News app 📰, Apple News+ lets you enjoy hundreds of magazines, popular newspapers, and content from premium digital publishers directly on your iPhone.

You can subscribe to Apple News+ or to Apple One Premier, which includes Apple News+ and other Apple services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

As a subscriber, you have access to current and available back issues of publications, and you can download content for offline reading and share stories and issues with others.

As a non-subscriber, you can browse, but not read, a collection of story headlines and publications personalized just for you, view the entire Apple News+ catalog, and browse issues by category—Entertainment and Food, for example. To read stories and issues, and to listen to Apple News+ audio stories, start a free trial or subscribe.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, Apple One, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to Apple News+
Tap the subscription button shown in a magazine or story in News, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You may be asked to sign in with your Apple ID.

Share Apple News+ with family members

When you subscribe to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, you can use Family Sharing to share Apple News+ with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple News+ is available to them the first time they open the News app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple News+ with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave the family group, or turn off Family Sharing.

Cancel or change your Apple News+ subscription

Tap Following, swipe up, tap Subscriptions below Manage, then do one of the following:

- *Apple News+ only:* Tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- *Apple News+ and individual channels:* Select Apple News+, tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you subscribe to Apple News+ as part of an Apple One Premier subscription and want to cancel your subscription, see the Apple Support article How to cancel a subscription from Apple.

Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone

To get the most out of Apple News+, follow your favorite publications, and browse through current and back issues.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Follow and unfollow publications

You follow an Apple News+ publication by following its channel. Do any of the following:

- Tap the Today tab or News+ tab, tap a story or issue from an Apple News+ publication, tap the publication's name at the top of the screen, then tap ⊕.

- Tap Search, enter the publication's name in the search field, then tap ⊕.

- Tap News+, swipe left on the categories near the top of the screen, tap Newspapers or Catalog, then tap Follow below the publication's cover.

To unfollow a publication, tap Following, swipe left, then tap Unfollow.

Browse Apple News+ issues and stories

Stories and issues from Apple News+ appear in the Today feed and channel feeds. Stories (but not issues) can also be found in topic feeds and search results. To access entire issues, tap the News+ tab at the bottom of the screen, where you can do any of the following:

- *View all available publications:* Near the top of the screen, swipe the options left, then tap Catalog.

- *View a specific content category:* Swipe left on the options near the top of the screen, tap Catalog, tap Featured, then tap a category such as Business, Entertainment, or Sports.

- *View new and recent issues:* Tap My Magazines. By default, new issues appear near the top of the screen. The issue you've most recently read appears first. If you've recently downloaded an issue, it appears next. To choose a different sorting option, tap 😊, then tap Sort by Name or Sort by Date.
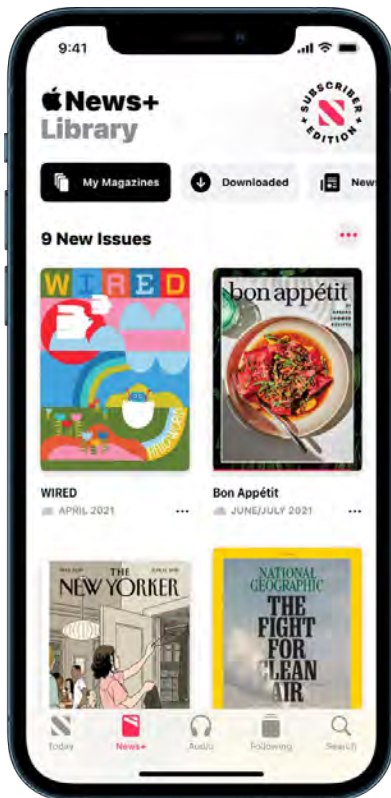
Note: If you block an Apple News+ publication, its issues are removed from My Magazines.

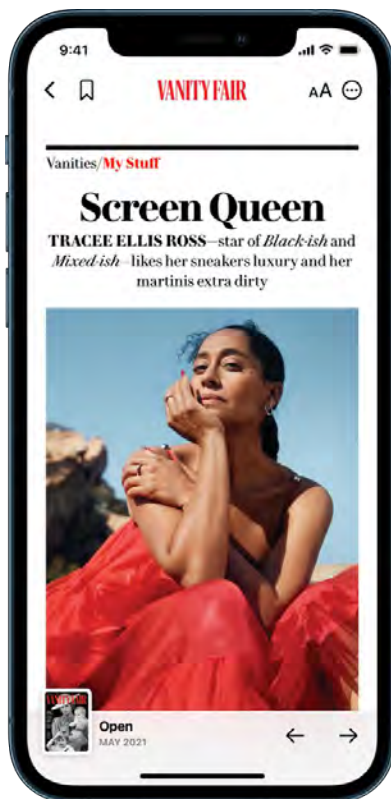To open a story or issue, do any of the following:

- Tap an issue cover in News+ or the Today feed.

- Tap Search, enter the name of the Apple News+ channel in the search field, tap the channel, then tap the issue.

- Follow a link to a story or issue that someone shared with you.

Access back issues

Do any of the following:

- Tap News+, tap My Magazines, tap ••• below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Browse Back Catalog.

- Tap a channel you follow, or search for a channel, then tap it. Below Recent Issues, swipe to the issue you want to read, then tap to open it. Tap Issues near the top of the screen to browse all available issues.

Read Apple News+ issues

Open the issue, where you can do any of the following:

- *View the table of contents:* Tap the cover thumbnail at the bottom left of the screen.

- *Navigate to a story:* In an issue in Apple News Format, tap the story link in the table of contents. In a PDF issue, tap the thumbnail of the page you want to view.

- *Page through an issue:* Swipe left or tap → to go to the next story, or swipe right or tap ← to go to the previous story.

- *Change the text size:* In stories in Apple News Format, tap ₐA, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. In PDF issues, pinch to zoom.

If you sign out in Settings 🐉 > [*your name*] > Media & Purchases, you can only access free stories—you must sign back in to access stories and download issues that require an Apple News+ subscription.

Download Apple News+ issues on iPhone

With the News app ⬛ and an Apple News+ subscription, you can download issues to read later.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Download an Apple News+ issue

1. Do any of the following:

   - Tap Today, then swipe down to My Magazines.

   - Tap News+, then tap My Magazines. You can also tap Catalog near the top of the screen, then tap a stack of magazines.

   - Tap Following, then tap a magazine channel you follow.

   - Tap Search, enter the magazine channel name in the search field, then tap the channel.

2. When you find the issue you want, tap ••• below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Download Issue.

   To download multiple issues, tap My Magazines, tap 😒, tap Select, tap the issues you want to download, then tap ⬇.

When you subscribe to Apple News+, the most recent issues of magazines you follow are automatically downloaded when iPhone is plugged into power, has sufficient storage space, and is connected to Wi-Fi. If you don't want to download issues automatically, go to Settings 🐉 > News, then turn off Download Issues. You can download issues only if you're an Apple News+ subscriber.

Read a downloaded issue

1. Tap the News+ tab.

2. Tap Downloaded near the top of the screen, then tap an issue.

Manually remove an Apple News+ issue

Under most conditions, automatically downloaded issues are removed from iPhone after 30 days, but you can remove them sooner.

Tap the News+ tab, then do any of the following:

1. Tap Downloaded near the top of the screen, tap ••• below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), tap Remove, then tap Remove Download.

   The issue is removed from the Downloaded tab, but its cover remains in My Magazines so you can easily access the issue again.

2. Tap My Magazines near the top of the screen, tap ••• below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), tap Remove, then tap Remove from My Magazines.

   The issue's cover and content are removed from iPhone and from any other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID and News is turned on in iCloud preferences or settings.

To remove multiple issues, tap My Magazines or Downloaded near the top of the screen, tap ⊙, tap Select, tap the issues you want to remove, then tap 🗑.

To remove all downloaded issues, tap Following > History, tap Clear, then tap Clear All.

When storage on iPhone is limited, issues may be automatically removed sooner than 30 days. See the Apple Support article Read magazines with Apple News+.

Listen to audio stories on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can listen to audio versions of select stories in the News app ◪.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Browse audio stories

Tap 🎧 to see Apple News+ audio stories and Apple News Today. As a subscriber, you see the following headings:

- *Editors' Picks:* Features audio stories chosen by the Apple News editors as well as the latest episodes of Apple News Today and Apple News In Conversation.

- *Up Next:* Stories you're currently listening to or have added to the Up Next queue.

- *For You:* Stories recommended to you based on your interests.

- *Story groups:* Dynamic collections of stories curated by the Apple News editors, based on a topic or theme, such as space exploration or stories to accompany your commute.

- *More to Explore:* Links to all audio stories, Apple News Today episodes, recently played stories, and story categories such as Arts & Entertainment, News & Politics, and Sports.

To learn more about a story before listening to it, tap See Details.

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, you can hear previews of audio stories in Editors' Picks, Audio Stories For You, and in story groups. You can also listen to full episodes of Apple News Today and Apple News In Conversation.

Play audio stories

1. Tap 🎧, then tap a story.

2. For more playback controls, tap the mini player at the bottom to open the full-screen player.

3. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.

   To close the full-screen player, tap •••, then tap Close Audio Player. To close the mini player, touch and hold the player, then tap Close Audio Player.

   Audio stories can also appear in a feed. To listen to the story, tap Play Now (Apple News+ subscription required). You can also tap the story to read it, then tap Play Now at the top of the story. If you're not a subscriber, you can listen to a preview of the story.

   Use any of the following controls:

Control	Description
▶	Play
❚❚	Pause
▶❚	Next story
↺15	Jump back 15 seconds
1×	Choose a faster or slower playback speed
📶	Stream audio to other devices
•••	Choose more actions such as place a story next or last in the queue, read a story, or share it

Add stories to Up Next

Do one of the following:

- In the Audio tab or a news feed, tap •••, then choose Play Next or Play Last.

- At the top of a story, touch and hold Play Now, then choose Play Next or Play Last.

  To continue listening from your most recent reading or listening position, tap Play Next from Here or Play Last from Here.

To reorder stories in the queue, tap See All, touch and hold ☰, then drag stories to the order you prefer.

Note: By default, if you're an Apple News+ subscriber, audio stories in your queue are automatically downloaded when iPhone is plugged into power, has sufficient storage space, and is connected to Wi-Fi. If you don't want them to download automatically, go to Settings 🖼 > News, then turn off Download Audio.

Read, share, and remove audio stories

For any audio story, tap ••• to see options for reading, sharing, and more. To remove stories from the Up Next queue or For You, touch and hold the story, then select Remove.

Some of these options are also available when you swipe left or right on a story.

When listening to a story, open the full-screen player, then tap ••• to see a list of similar options.

Search for stories in News on iPhone

The News app 🅽 keeps track of a wide variety of channels, topics, and stories, which makes it easy to find content that interests you.

Search for channels, topics, or stories

1. Tap Search, then tap the search field.

2. Enter any of the following:

   - The name of a channel, such as CNN or *Washington Post*

   - A topic, such as fashion, business, or politics

   - An event, such as an upcoming meteor shower

In the results list, tap ⊕ to follow the channel or topic.

Save stories in News on iPhone

In the News app 🅽, you can save stories to read later, online or offline.

Save a story

When reading a story, tap 🔖 to save it.

To read a saved story, tap Following, tap Saved Stories, then tap the story. To delete a saved story, swipe the story left.

Check and edit your reading history

Tap Following, tap History, then do any of the following:

- *Read a story:* Tap the story.

- *Delete a story:* Swipe the story left.

- *Remove your reading history:* Tap Clear, then tap Clear History.

- *Remove the information used to create recommendations:* Tap Clear, then tap Clear Recommendations.

- *Clear everything:* Tap Clear, then tap Clear All.

  Your News history, recommendation information, saved stories, and downloaded issues and audio stories are removed from all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

  Note: Story titles remain in Saved Stories, but you must be online to read the stories.

  If you clear recommendations, and Show Siri Suggestions in App is on in Settings 🔘 > News > Siri & Search, recommendations based on your Safari and app usage and your reading habits in News are cleared. To prevent News from suggesting stories based on your Safari and app usage, turn off Show Siri Suggestions in App.

When you clear your history, the identifier used by Apple News to report statistics to news publishers is also reset. You can reset the identifier at any time by going to Settings > News, then turning on Reset Identifier.

How to subscribe to individual channels on iPhone

In the News app 📰, in addition to subscribing to Apple News+, you can subscribe to individual publications from select publishers. There are three ways to access these subscriptions in News:

- *Subscribe within News:* You can purchase a subscription directly in News. In a channel that offers subscriptions, tap the subscription button.

- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher's app:* If you've downloaded a publisher's app from the App Store, and subscriptions you've bought as in-app purchases are also available in News, you're automatically granted access in News. See the Apple Support article Buy additional app features with in-app purchases and subscriptions.

- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher:* If you've purchased a subscription directly from a publisher's website or from the publisher's app on a non-Apple device, the publisher may allow you to sign in to your account in News to access your subscription there.

  To sign in, tap a story that requires a subscription to read, then tap Already a Subscriber? Enter the user name and password for your existing subscription.

When you subscribe to a channel, you automatically follow it, and stories from the channel appear in the Today feed.

To cancel a subscription, tap the Following tab, swipe up, tap Subscriptions below the Manage heading, select the subscription, then tap Cancel Subscription.

Notes

Take notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app 📒 to jot down quick thoughts or organize detailed information with checklists, images, web links, scanned documents, handwritten notes, and sketches.
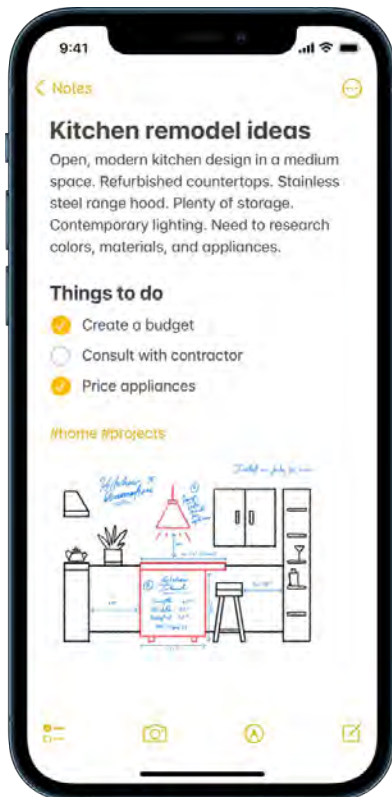
Create and format a new note

Draft

🎤 **Siri:** Say something like: "Create a new note."

Or do the following:

1. Tap 📝, then enter your text.

   The first line of the note becomes the note's title.

2. To change the formatting, tap Aα.

   You can apply a heading style, bold or italic font, a bulleted or numbered list, and more.

3. To save the note, tap Done.

💡 **Tip:** To choose a default style for the first line in all new notes, go to Settings 🖥 > Notes > New Notes Start With.

Add a checklist

In a note, tap ☑, then do any of the following:

- *Add items to the list:* Enter text, then tap return to enter the next item.

- *Increase or decrease the indentation:* Swipe right or left on the item.

- *Mark an item as completed:* Tap the empty circle next to the item to add a checkmark.

- *Reorder an item:* Touch and hold the empty circle or checkmark next to the item, then drag the item to a new position in the list.

- *Manage items in the list:* Tap the list to see the menu, tap ▶, tap Checklist, then tap Check All, Uncheck All, Delete Checked, or Move Checked to Bottom.

To automatically sort checked items to the bottom in all your notes, go to Settings 🖥 > Notes > Sort Checked Items, then tap Automatically.

Add or edit a table

In a note, tap ▦, then do any of the following:

- *Enter text:* Tap a cell, then enter your text. To start another line of text in the cell, touch and hold the Shift key and tap next.

- *Move to the next cell:* Tap next. When you reach the last cell, tap next to start a new row.

- *Format a row or column:* Tap a row or column selection handle, then choose a style, such as bold, italic, underline, or strikethrough.

- *Add or delete a row or column:* Tap a row or column selection handle, then choose to add or delete.

- *Move a row or column:* Touch and hold a row or column selection handle, then drag it to a new position.

- *See more columns:* If the table becomes wider than your screen, swipe right or left on the table to see all the columns.

To remove the table and convert its contents to text, tap a cell in the table, tap ⊞, then tap Convert to Text.

Take action on addresses, phone numbers, dates, and more

In your notes, a yellow underline appears below text that's recognized as a street or email address, phone number, date, or other data. Tap the underlined text to take action on it. For example, you can see a street address in Maps, compose an email, call a phone number, or add a calendar event.

Note: Data detection is available when the system language of your iPhone is set to a supported language in Settings ⚙ > General > Language & Region. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Draw or write in Notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app 📒 to draw a sketch or jot a handwritten note with your finger. You can choose from a variety of Markup tools and colors and draw straight lines with the ruler.

Draw or write in a note

1. Tap Ⓐ, then draw or write with your finger.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Change color or tools:* Use the Markup tools.

   - *Adjust the handwriting area:* Drag the resize handle (on the left) up or down.

   💡 **Tip:** You can search handwritten text (in supported languages) in Notes. If the note doesn't have a title, the first line of handwritten text becomes the suggested title. To edit the title, scroll to the top of the note, then tap Edit.

Select and edit drawings and handwriting

1. In the Markup toolbar, tap the Lasso tool ⌇ (between the eraser and ruler).

2. Touch and hold to select drawings and handwriting, then drag to expand the selection.

   Adjust the selection by dragging the handles if necessary.

3. Tap the selection, then choose Cut, Copy, Delete, Duplicate, Copy as Text, or Insert Space Above.

   If you choose Copy as Text, you can paste the transcribed text in another note or another app.

Show lines or grids in notes

- *In an existing note:* Tap 😐, tap Lines & Grids, then choose a style.

- *Choose the default style for all new notes:* Go to Settings 🌐 > Notes > Lines & Grids.

Scan text and documents in Notes using the camera on iPhone

In the Notes app 📒, you can use the camera to scan text and documents.

Scan text into a note

You can insert scanned text using the camera (on supported models with iOS 15.4 or later; in supported languages).

1. In a note, tap 📷, then tap Scan Text.

2. Position iPhone so that the text appears within the camera frame.

3. After the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap 📄.

4. Drag or use grab points to select text, then tap Insert.

Scan a document

1. In a note, tap 📷, then choose Scan Documents.

2. Position iPhone so that the document page appears on the screen; iPhone automatically captures the page.

   To manually capture the page, tap ○ or press a volume button. To turn the flash on or off, tap ⚡.

3. Scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.

4. To make changes to the saved document, tap it, then do any of the following:

   - *Add more pages:* Tap ⊕.

   - *Crop the image:* Tap ⊐.

   - *Apply a filter:* Tap ⊛, then choose to scan the page as a color, grayscale, or black-and-white document, or as a photo.

   - *Rotate the image:* Tap ⬜.

   - *Mark up the document:* Tap ⬆, tap Ⓐ, then use the Markup tools to add annotations or your signature.

   - *Delete the scan:* Tap 🗑.

Add photos, videos, and more to notes on iPhone

In the Notes app 📝, you can attach photos, videos, and info from other apps—maps, links, documents, and more.

Add a photo or video

1. In a note, tap 📷.

2. Choose a photo or video from your photo library, or take a new photo or video.

3. To change the preview size of attachments, touch and hold an attachment, then tap Small Images or Large Images.

💡 **Tip:** To draw on a photo, tap the photo, then tap Ⓐ.

To save photos and videos taken in Notes to the Photos app, go to Settings ⚙️ > Notes, then turn on Save to Photos.

Add info from another app to a note

You can add information from another app as an attachment to a note—for example, a location in Maps, a webpage in Safari, a PDF in Files, or a screenshot.

1. In the other app, open the item you want to share (for example, a map or webpage).

2. Tap Share or ⬆️, then tap Notes.

3. Save the item to a new note or choose an existing note.

View all attachments in Notes

1. Above the notes list, tap ⋯, then tap View Attachments to see thumbnails of drawings, photos, links, documents, and other attachments. (Attachments in locked notes aren't shown.)

2. To go to a note with a specific attachment, tap the attachment thumbnail, then tap Show in Note.

Search and organize your notes in folders on iPhone

In the Notes app 📝, you can search all your notes for typed and handwritten text, objects that appear in images, and text in scanned documents. You can also organize your notes into folders and pin the important notes to the top of the list.
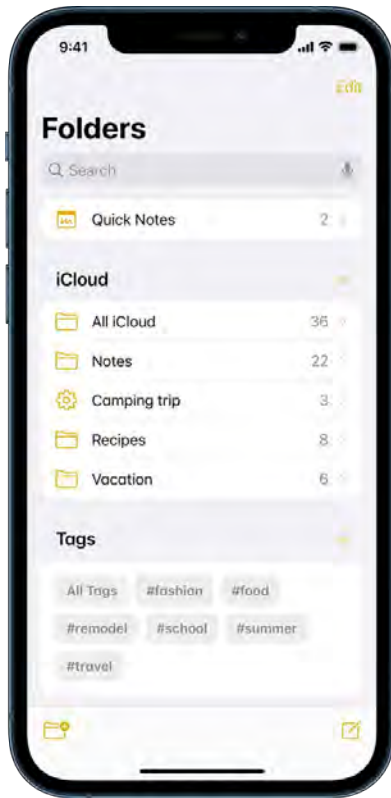
Create, rename, move, or delete a folder or subfolder

In the folders list, do any of the following:

- *Create a folder:* Tap 📁, choose an account (if you have more than one), tap New Folder, then enter a name.

- *Create a subfolder:* Touch and hold a folder, then drag it onto another folder.

- *Rename a folder:* Touch and hold a folder, tap Rename, then enter a new name.

- *Move a folder:* Swipe left on the folder, tap 📁, then choose a new location. Or touch and hold the folder, then drag it to a new location. The folder becomes a subfolder if you drag it onto another folder.

- *Delete a folder:* Swipe left on the folder, then tap 🗑. Or touch and hold the folder, then tap Delete.

  If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the notes.

Change the folder view and sort, move, pin, or delete notes
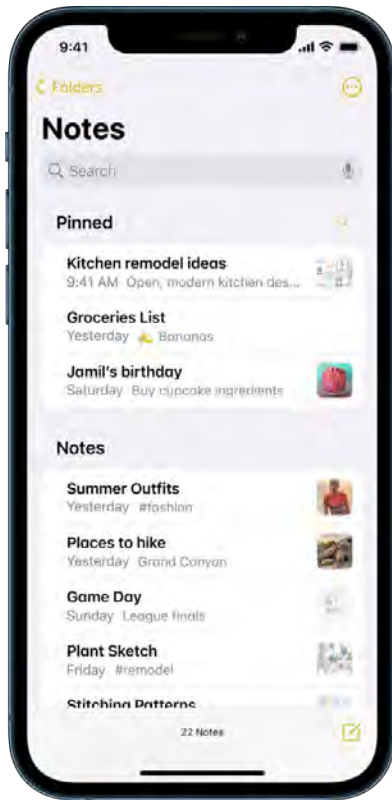
In a notes list, do any of the following:

- *Change the folder view:* Tap 😀, then choose View as Gallery or View as List.

- *Change the sort order of a folder:* Tap 😀, tap "Sort by," then choose Date Edited, Date Created, or Title. To choose a default sorting method for all your folders, go to Settings 🎛️ > Notes > Sort Notes By.

- *Move a note to a different folder:* Swipe left on the note, then tap 🗂️. Or touch and hold the note, tap Move, then choose a folder.

- *Pin an important note to the top of the list:* Touch and hold the note, then tap Pin Note. Or swipe right on the note, then tap the pin.

- *Delete a note:* Swipe left on the note, then tap 🗑️. Or touch and hold the note, then tap Delete.

  If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the note.

Search your notes

You can search for tags, typed and handwritten text, objects that appear in images, and text in scanned documents.

1. Swipe down on the notes list to reveal the search field.

2. Tap the search field, then enter what you're looking for. You can also choose a suggested search, such as "Notes with Drawings," then enter additional text to refine your search.

   If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results. The search includes handwritten text (in supported languages), photos, and scanned documents.

Search within a note for typed and handwritten text

1. Open the note you want to search.

2. Tap 😐, then tap Find in Note.

3. Type the text you're looking for in the search field.

Use tags and Smart Folders in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app 📒, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your notes. You can add one or more tags, such as #shopping and #work, to a note. Easily search and filter your notes across folders using the Tag Browser or Smart Folders.

Add tags to notes

When you create or edit a note, type # followed by the tag name or choose a tag from the menu above the keyboard. A tag can be only one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to a note.

Rename or delete a tag

In the Tag Browser (below your folders), touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.

When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Folders that use it.

View notes with tags

In the Tag Browser (below your folders), tap All Tags. To filter the list, tap one or more tags.

Create a Smart Folder

1. Tap 📁, choose an account (if you have more than one), then tap New Smart Folder.

2. Enter a name, then select the tags.

You can also create a Smart Folder when viewing a list of tagged notes; tap 😀, then tap Create Smart Folder.

Convert a folder to a Smart Folder

When viewing the folder you want to convert, tap 😀, scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart Folder.

When you convert a folder, its notes are moved to the Notes folder and tagged with the name of the Smart Folder.

Note: You can't convert a shared folder, a folder with a subfolder, or a folder that contains locked notes.

Edit a Smart Folder

Touch and hold a Smart Folder, then tap Edit Smart Folder. You can change the name or the tags shown.

Share notes and collaborate on iPhone

In the Notes app 📒, you can send a copy of a note to a friend. You can also invite people to collaborate on a note or on a folder of notes in iCloud, and everyone will see the latest changes.

Send a copy of a note

1. Open the note you want to share.

2. Tap 😀, tap Send a Copy, then choose how to send your note.

Collaborate on a note

When you share a note in iCloud, all the collaborators see everyone's changes. Everyone you share with must be signed in with their Apple ID to edit or view the note.

Note: You can't collaborate on a locked note.

1. Do one of the following:

   - In the notes list, swipe left on the note you want to share, then tap 👥.

   - Open the note you want to share, tap 😀, then tap Share Note.

2. Tap Share Options, then choose "Can make changes" or "View only." If you choose "Can make changes," you can also allow collaborators to invite other collaborators.

3. Choose how to send your invitation (for example, using Mail or Messages).

View activity in a note

In the notes list, an orange dot to the left of a note title indicates the note has changed since you last looked at it.

1. Open the note, then swipe right on the note or swipe up on the Activity card to see who made changes and when.

2. To adjust how the activity is shown, tap 👥, then choose any of the following:

   - *Show Updates:* Shows changes made since you last opened the note.

   - *Show All Activity:* Shows all activity in the note.

   - *Show Highlights:* Shows names, dates, and changes made by each collaborator.

💡 **Tip:** To mention a collaborator and notify them of important updates, type an @ sign followed by their name.

Collaborate on a folder

When you share a folder of notes in iCloud, all the collaborators see everyone's changes. People who are allowed to make changes can create or edit notes, add attachments, and even create subfolders if they're using iCloud.

Note: You can't collaborate on a folder with locked notes.

1. Do one of the following:

   - In the folder list, swipe left on the folder you want to share, then tap 👥.

   - Open the folder you want to share, tap ⊙, then tap Share Folder.

2. Tap Share Options, then choose "Can make changes" or "View only." If you choose "Can make changes," you can also allow collaborators to invite other collaborators.

3. Choose how to send your invitation (for example, using Mail or Messages).

View activity in a folder

Touch and hold the folder, then tap Show Folder Activity.

Add or remove collaborators or stop collaborating

Tap ⊙, tap Manage Shared Note or Manage Shared Folder, then do any of the following:

- *Add people:* Choose a sharing option.

- *Remove people:* Swipe left on the collaborator you want to remove, then tap Remove.

- *Change permissions:* Tap Share Options, then choose "Can make changes" or "View only." If you choose "Can make changes," you can also allow collaborators to invite other collaborators.

- *Stop sharing:* When you choose this option, the shared note or folder is deleted from the devices of the other participants.

Lock your notes on iPhone

In the Notes app 📒, you can lock notes with a password to protect your sensitive information. Notes uses a single password for all your locked notes in an account (for example, your iCloud account), on all your devices.

You can use Face ID (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID (on an iPhone with a Home button) as a convenient way to access your locked notes; however, don't rely on Face ID or Touch ID as the only means of unlocking your notes. If you update your Face ID or Touch ID settings, or want to change your Notes password, you have to reenter your Notes password. For this reason, it's strongly recommended that you add a password hint when you create the password.

Set up your notes password

The password you set applies to all notes you lock from now on.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Notes > Password.

2. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.

3. Enter a password and add a hint to help you remember it.

   For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.

Important: If you forget your notes password, and you can't use Face ID or Touch ID to unlock your notes, you won't be able to view your locked notes, and Apple can't help you regain access to those locked notes.

You can reset your notes password, but this doesn't give you access to previously locked notes. The new password applies to all notes you lock from now on. Go to Settings > Notes > Password > Reset Password.

See the Apple Support article How to lock notes on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Lock a note

You can only lock notes on your device and notes in iCloud. You can't lock notes that have PDFs, audio, video, Keynote, Pages, Numbers documents attached, or notes that sync with other accounts. You can't lock an iCloud note that has collaborators.

1. Open the note, then tap ⊙.

2. Tap Lock.

When a note is locked, the title remains visible in the notes list.

To remove a lock from a note, tap ⊙, then tap Remove.

Open a locked note

Opening one locked note opens all your locked notes in the same account for several minutes so you can easily jump into another note or copy and paste information from other apps.

1. Tap the locked note, then tap View Note.

2. To open the note, use Face ID, Touch ID, or your Notes password.

To lock your notes again, do one of the following:

- Tap the lock icon at the top of the screen.

- Tap Lock Now at the bottom of the notes list.

- Close the Notes app.

- Lock your iPhone.

Change your Notes settings on iPhone

Customize your preferences for the Notes app 📒 in Settings. You can store your notes in iCloud, access Notes from the Lock Screen, and more.

Keep your notes up to date on all your devices with iCloud

Go to Settings ⚙️ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Notes.

Your iCloud notes—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

Change your Notes settings

Go to Settings ⚙️ > Notes, then adjust any of the settings. For example:

- *Default Account:* Choose the default account for Siri and the Notes widget.

- *"On My iPhone" Account:* Notes in this account appear only on your iPhone. Your notes in iCloud aren't affected.

- *Access Notes from Lock Screen:* Choose Always Create New Note or Resume Last Note. Or turn it off to prevent access from the Lock Screen.

Phone

Make a call on iPhone

To start a call in the Phone app 📞, dial the number on the keypad, tap a favorite or recent call, or choose a number in your Contacts list.

Dial a number

🎙 **Siri:** Say "call" or "dial" followed by a number. Speak each digit separately—for example, "four one five, five five five…." For the 800 area code in the U.S., you can say "eight hundred." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or do the following:

1. Tap Keypad.
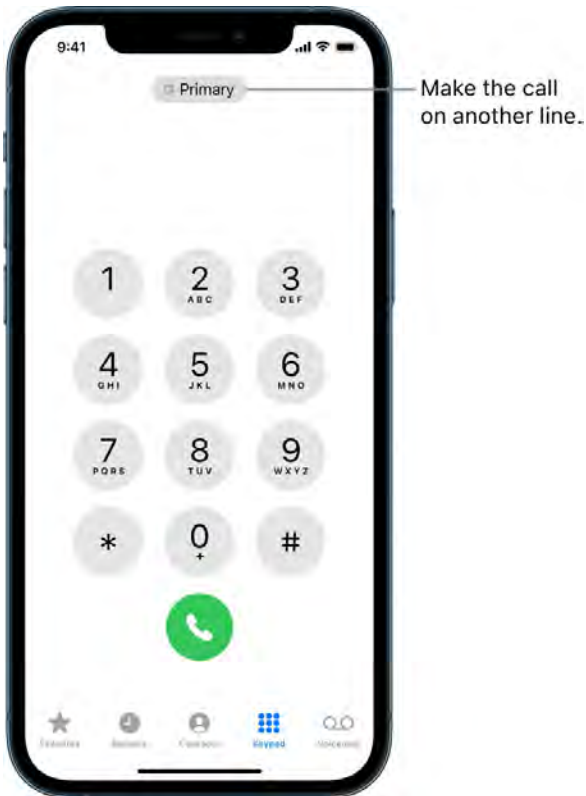
2. Do any of the following:

   - *Use a different line:* On models with Dual SIM, tap the line at the top, then choose a line.

   - *Enter the number using the keypad:* If you make a mistake, tap ⊗.

   - *Redial the last number:* Tap 📞 to see the last number you dialed, then tap 📞 to call that number.

   - *Paste a number you've copied:* Tap the phone number field above the keypad, then tap Paste.

   - *Enter a soft (2-second) pause:* Touch and hold the star (*) key until a comma appears.

   - *Enter a hard pause (to pause dialing until you tap the Dial button):* Touch and hold the pound (#) key until a semicolon appears.

   - *Enter a "+" for international calls:* Touch and hold the "0" key until "+" appears.

3. Tap 📞 to start the call.

To end the call, tap 🔴.

Call your favorites

1. Tap Favorites, then choose one to make a call.

   On models with Dual SIM, iPhone chooses the line for the call in the following order:

   - The preferred line for this contact (if set)

   - The line used for the last call to or from this contact

   - The default voice line

2. To manage your Favorites list, do any of the following:

   - *Add a favorite:* Tap $+$, then choose a contact.

   - *Rearrange or delete favorites:* Tap Edit.

Redial or return a recent call

🎤 **Siri:** Say something like: "Redial that last number" or "Return my last call." Learn how to ask Siri.

You can also do the following:

1. Tap Recents, then choose one to make a call.

2. To get more info about a call and the caller, tap ⓘ.

   A red badge indicates the number of missed calls.

Call someone on your Contacts list

🎤 **Siri:** Say something like: "Call Eliza's mobile." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or do the following:

1. In the Phone app, tap Contacts.

2. Tap the contact, then tap the phone number you want to call.

   On models with Dual SIM, the default voice line is used for the call unless you set a preferred line for this contact.

Change your outgoing call settings

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Phone.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Turn on Show My Caller ID:* (GSM) Your phone number is shown in My Number. For FaceTime calls, your phone number is displayed even if caller ID is turned off.

   - *Turn on Dial Assist for international calls:* (GSM) When Dial Assist is turned on, iPhone automatically adds the correct international or local prefix when you call your contacts and favorites.

     For information about making international calls (including rates and other charges that may apply), contact your carrier.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Make emergency calls on iPhone

In case of emergency, use iPhone to quickly call for help. With Emergency SOS, you can quickly and easily call for help and alert your emergency contacts.

If you share your Medical ID, iPhone can send your medical information to emergency services when you call or text 911 or use Emergency SOS (U.S. only).

Note: For emergency help in the U.S., you can send a text message to 911 (not available in all locations). See the Apple Support article Text 911 on iPhone or Apple Watch.

Dial the emergency number when iPhone is locked

1. On the Passcode screen, tap Emergency.

2. Dial the emergency number (for example, 911 in the U.S.), then tap 📞.

Use Emergency SOS (all countries or regions except India)

- *On an iPhone with Face ID, iPhone SE (2nd generation and later), iPhone 8, and iPhone 8 Plus:* Press and hold the side button and either volume button. Continue to hold the buttons when the Emergency SOS slider appears, until iPhone plays a warning sound and starts a countdown. (To skip the countdown, drag the Emergency SOS slider.) When the countdown ends, iPhone calls emergency services.

  Or, you can enable iPhone to start Emergency SOS when you click the side button five times. Go to Settings 🔧 > Emergency SOS, then turn on Call with Side Button.

- *On other iPhone models:* Click the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model) five times, then drag the Emergency SOS slider.
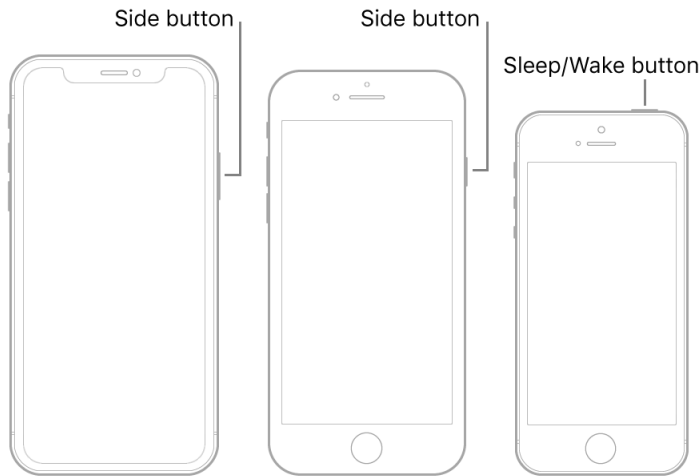
Side button   Side button

Sleep/Wake button

After the emergency call ends, iPhone alerts your emergency contacts that you made a call and sends them your current location (if available).

Use Emergency SOS (India)

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Triple-click the side button. Or, if Accessibility Shortcut is turned on, press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag Emergency SOS.

- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Triple-click the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model).

By default, iPhone plays a warning sound, starts a countdown, then calls the emergency services.

After the emergency call ends, iPhone alerts your emergency contacts that you made a call and sends them your current location (if available).

Change your Emergency SOS settings

1. Go to Settings 🅢 > Emergency SOS.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Turn Auto Call on or off:* When Auto Call is on and you start Emergency SOS, iPhone plays a warning sound, starts a countdown, then calls the emergency services in your region.

   - *Turn the countdown sound on or off:* When Countdown Sound is on, iPhone plays a warning sound even in silent mode or when Do Not Disturb is turned on.

   - *Manage your emergency contacts:* Tap Set Up Emergency Contacts in Health or Edit Emergency Contacts in Health. See Create a Medical ID.

Important information about emergency calls on iPhone

- You can use iPhone to make an emergency call in many locations, provided that cellular service is available, but you should not rely on it for emergencies. Some cellular networks may not accept an emergency call from iPhone if iPhone isn't activated, if iPhone isn't compatible with or configured to operate on a particular cellular network, or (when applicable) if iPhone doesn't have a SIM card or the SIM card is PIN-locked.

- In certain countries or regions, your location information (if determinable) may be accessed by emergency service providers when you make an emergency call.

- Review your carrier's emergency calling information to understand the limits of emergency calling over Wi-Fi.

- With CDMA, when an emergency call ends, iPhone enters *emergency call mode* for a few minutes to allow a call back from emergency services. During this time, data transmission and text messages are blocked.

- After making an emergency call, certain call features that block or silence incoming calls may be disabled for a short period of time to allow a callback from emergency services. These include Do Not Disturb, Silence Unknown Callers, and Screen Time.

- On an iPhone with Dual SIM, if you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

  If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone

You can answer, silence, or decline an incoming call. If you decline a call, it goes to voicemail. You can respond with a text or remind yourself to return the call.

Answer a call

Do one of the following:

- Tap 📞.

- If iPhone is locked, drag the slider.

💡 **Tip:** You can have Siri announce incoming calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

Silence a call

Press the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model) or either volume button.

You can still answer a silenced call until it goes to voicemail.

Decline a call and send it directly to voicemail

Do one of the following:

- Press the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model) twice quickly.

- Tap 📞.

- Swipe up on the call banner.

You can also swipe down on the call banner for more options.

Do any of the following:

- Tap Remind Me, then choose when you want a reminder to return the call.

- Tap Message, then choose a default reply or tap Custom.

  To create your own default replies, go to Settings 🖼️ > Phone > Respond with Text, then tap any default message and replace it with your own text.

Note: In some countries or regions, declined calls are disconnected without being sent to voicemail.

See also Respond to a second call on the same line.

While on a call on iPhone

When you're on a phone call, you can switch the audio to the speaker or a Bluetooth device. If you get another incoming call, you can respond or ignore it.

Adjust the audio during a call

To change the volume, press the volume buttons on the side of iPhone. Or swipe down on the call banner, then do any of the following:

- *Mute:* Tap the mute button.

- *Put the call on hold:* Touch and hold the mute button.

- *Talk handsfree:* Tap the audio button, then choose an audio destination.

Use another app while on a call

1. Go to the Home Screen, then open the app.

2. To return to the call, tap the green call indicator at the top of the screen.

Respond to a second call on the same line

If you're on a call and receive a second call, do one the following:

- *Ignore the call and send it to voicemail:* Tap Ignore.

- *End the first call and answer the new one:* When using a GSM network, tap End + Accept. With a CDMA network, tap End and when the second call rings back, tap Accept, or drag the slider if iPhone is locked.

- *Put the first call on hold and answer the new one:* Tap Hold + Accept.

  With a call on hold, tap Swap to switch between calls, or tap Merge Calls to talk with both parties at once. See Start a conference call.

Note: With CDMA, you can't switch between calls if the second call was outgoing, but you can merge the calls. You can't merge calls if the second call was incoming. If you end the second call or the merged call, both calls are terminated.

On models with Dual SIM, note the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling must be turned on for a line to enable that line to receive calls while the other line is in use for a call. If you receive a call on one line while the other is in use for a call, and no Wi-Fi connection is available, iPhone uses the cellular data of the line that's in use for the call to receive the other line's call. Charges may apply. The line that's in use for the call must be permitted for data use in your Cellular Data settings (either as the default line, or as the non-default line with Allow Cellular Data Switching turned on) to receive the other line's call.

- If you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

  If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

Start a conference call

With GSM, you can set up a conference call with up to five people (depending on your carrier).

Note: Conference calls may not be available if your call is using VoLTE (Voice over LTE) or Wi-Fi Calling.

1. While on a call, tap Add Call, make another call, then Tap Merge Calls.

   Repeat to add more people to the conference.

2. During the conference call, do any of the following:

   - *Talk privately with one person:* Tap ⓘ, then tap Private next to the person. Tap Merge Calls to resume the conference.

   - *Add an incoming caller on the same line:* Tap Hold Call + Answer, then tap Merge Calls.

   - *Drop one person:* Tap ⓘ next to a person, then tap End.

Check your voicemail on iPhone

In the Phone app 📞, Visual Voicemail (available from select carriers) shows a list of your messages. You can choose which ones to play and delete without listening to all of them. A badge on the Voicemail icon indicates the number of unheard messages.

Voicemail transcription (beta; available only in certain countries or regions) shows your messages transcribed into text. Transcription is limited to voicemails in English received on your iPhone with iOS 10 or later. Transcription depends on the quality of the recording.

Note: Voicemail, Visual Voicemail, and Voicemail transcription are available from select carriers in select countries or regions.

Set up voicemail

The first time you tap Voicemail, you're asked to create a voicemail password and record your voicemail greeting.

1. Tap Voicemail, then tap Set Up Now.

2. Create a voicemail password.

3. Choose a greeting—Default or Custom; if you choose Custom, you can record a new greeting.

Play, share, or delete a voicemail message

🎙️ **Siri:** Say something like: "Play the voicemail from Eliza." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or do the following:

1. Tap Voicemail, then tap a message.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Play the message:* Tap ▶.

     Messages are saved until you delete them or your carrier erases them.

   - *Share the message:* Tap ⬆.

   - *Delete the message:* Tap 🗑.

     Important: In some countries or regions, deleted messages may be permanently erased by your carrier. Your voice messages may also be deleted if you change your SIM card.

To recover a deleted message, tap Deleted Messages, tap the message, then tap Undelete.

Check your messages when Visual Voicemail isn't available

- *On your iPhone:* Tap Voicemail, then follow the instructions.

- *On another phone:* Dial your own mobile number, press * or # (depending on your carrier) to bypass your greeting, then enter your voicemail password.

Change your voicemail settings

- Change your greeting: Tap Voicemail, then tap Greeting.

- *Change your voicemail password:* Go to Settings 🔘 > Phone > Change Voicemail Password, then enter the new password.

  If you forgot your voicemail password, contact your wireless carrier.

- *Change the alert for new voicemail:* Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics or Settings > Sounds.

Select ringtones and vibrations on iPhone

You can set the default ringtone and assign distinctive ringtones to certain people. You can also use vibrations and turn the ringer off.

Change the alert tones and vibrations

See Change iPhone sounds and vibrations.

iPhone comes with ringtones that play for incoming calls. You can also purchase more ringtones in the iTunes Store.

Assign a different ringtone to a contact

1. Open the Contacts app 🖼️.

2. Select a contact, tap Edit, tap Ringtone, then choose a ringtone.

Turn the ringer on or off

Flip the Ring/Silent switch to turn silent mode on or off. Clock alarms still play when silent mode is turned on.

To temporarily silence incoming calls, Turn a Focus on or off on iPhone.

Make calls using Wi-Fi on iPhone

When your iPhone has a low cellular signal, use Wi-Fi Calling to make and receive calls through a Wi-Fi network.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ > Cellular.

2. If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line (below Cellular Plans).

3. Tap Wi-Fi Calling, then turn on Wi-Fi Calling on This iPhone.

4. Enter or confirm your address for emergency services.

   Note: Emergency calls on your iPhone are routed through cellular service when available. In the event that cellular service isn't available, and you have enabled Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls may be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information may be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers may use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location. When connected to Wi-Fi calling, your iPhone may not receive emergency alerts.

When Wi-Fi Calling is available, "Wi-Fi" is displayed after your carrier name in the status bar, and all your calls go through Wi-Fi.

Note: If the Wi-Fi connection is lost when you make calls, calls switch automatically to your carrier's cellular network using VoLTE (Voice over LTE), if available and turned on. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone. (VoLTE calls also switch to Wi-Fi when a Wi-Fi connection becomes available.) Contact your carrier for feature availability.

Set up call forwarding and call waiting on iPhone

You can set up call forwarding and call waiting on iPhone if you have cellular service through a GSM network.

If you have cellular service through a CDMA network, contact your carrier for information about enabling and using these features.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Phone.

2. Tap any of the following:

   - *Call Forwarding:* 📞→ appears in the status bar when call forwarding is on. You must be in range of the cellular network when you set iPhone to forward calls, or calls won't be forwarded.

     On models with Dual SIM, choose a line.

   - *Call Waiting:* If you're on a call and call waiting is turned off, incoming calls go directly to voicemail.

     On models with Dual SIM, call waiting works only for incoming calls on the same line, unless the other line has Wi-Fi calling enabled and a data connection is available. See Set up cellular service on iPhone.

For information about conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) when the line is busy or not in service, contact your carrier for setup information.

Avoid unwanted calls on iPhone

You can avoid unwanted calls by blocking certain people and sending unknown and spam callers directly to voicemail.

Block voice calls, FaceTime calls, and messages from certain people

In the Phone app 📞, do any of the following.

- Tap Favorites, Recents, or Voicemail. Tap ⓘ next to the number or contact you want to block, scroll down, then tap Block this Caller.

- Tap Contacts, tap the contact you want to block, scroll down, then tap Block this Caller.

Manage your blocked contacts

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Phone > Blocked Contacts.

2. Tap Edit.

Send unknown and spam callers to voicemail

Go to Settings ⚙️ > Phone, then tap any of the following:

- *Silence Unknown Callers:* You get notifications for calls from people in your contacts, recent outgoing calls, and Siri Suggestions.

- *Call Blocking & Identification:* Turn on Silence Junk Callers (available with certain carriers) to silence calls identified by your carrier as potential spam or fraud.

Photos

View photos in the Photos app on iPhone

Use the Photos app 🌸 to find and view all of the photos and videos on your iPhone.

How photos and videos are organized in Photos

You navigate Photos using the Library, For You, Albums, and Search buttons at the bottom of the screen.

Tap to navigate Photos.
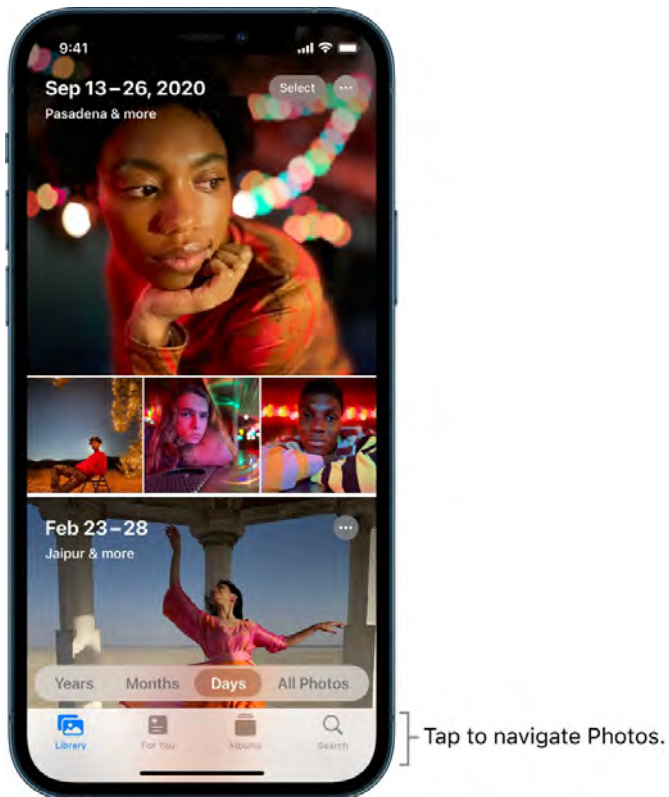
- *Library:* Browse your photos and videos organized by days, months, years, and all photos; see Browse photos in your library.

- *For You:* View your Memories, shared photos, featured photos, and sharing suggestions in a personalized feed; see View Memories and Share photos with Sharing Suggestions.

- *Albums:* View albums you created or shared, and your photos organized automatically by categories—for example, People & Places and Media Types; see Organize photos in albums.

- *Search:* Type in the search field to search for photos by date, location, caption, or objects they contain. Or browse photos already grouped by important events, people, places, and categories; see Search for photos.

Browse photos in your library

To browse your photos and videos by when they were taken, tap Library, then select any of the following:

- *Years:* Quickly locate a specific year in your photo library.

- *Months:* View collections of photos that you took throughout a month, organized by significant events—like a family outing, social occasion, birthday party, or trip.

- *Days:* View your best photos in chronological order, grouped by the time or place the photos were taken.

- *All Photos:* View all of your photos and videos.

💡 **Tip:** When viewing All Photos, tap ⚫ to zoom in or out, view photos by aspect ratio or square, filter photos, or see photos on a map.

Photos removes similar photos and clutter (such as screenshots, whiteboards, and receipts) from Years, Months, and Days views. To see every photo and video, tap All Photos.

View individual photos

Tap a photo to view it in full screen on your iPhone.

Double-tap or pinch out to zoom in on the photo—drag to see other parts of the photo; double-tap or pinch closed to zoom back out.

💡 **Tip:** When viewing a Live Photo ◎, touch and hold the photo to play it.

Swipe to browse through your photos.

Tap ‹ or drag the photo down to continue browsing or return to the search results.

See photo and video information

To see information about a photo or video, tap ⓘ or swipe up while viewing it in full screen. Depending on the photo or video, you see the following details:

- People identified in the photo

- A caption field to describe the photo or video, and make it easier to find in Search

- Items detected by Visual Look Up

- If the photo was shared with you in Messages or another app

- The date and time the photo or video was taken; tap Adjust to edit the date and time

- Camera metadata such as lens, shutter speed, file size, and more

- Where the photo or video was taken; tap the link to view the location in Maps

---

Play videos and slideshows in the Photos app on iPhone

Use the Photos app 🌸 to play videos you've recorded or saved on your iPhone. You can also create slideshows of the photos, videos, and Live Photos in your library.

Play a video

As you browse photos and videos in the Photos app, tap a video to play it on your iPhone. While it plays, you can do any of the following:

- Tap the player controls below the video to pause, unmute, favorite, share, delete, or see video information; tap the screen to hide the player controls.

- Double-tap the screen to switch between full screen and fit-to-screen.

- Touch and hold the frame viewer at the bottom of the screen to pause the video, then slide the viewer left or right to move back or forward.

Make and play a slideshow

You can create a slideshow to view a collection of photos and videos that you choose from your library. Slideshows are automatically formatted and set to music.

1. Tap Library, then view photos by All Photos or Days.

2. Tap Select.

3. Tap each photo you want to include in the slideshow, then tap ⬆️.

4. Tap Slideshow from the list of options.

   To change the slideshow theme, music, and more, tap the screen while the slideshow plays, then tap Options.

Note: You can also make a slideshow from an album. Tap Albums, tap the album you want to create a slideshow from, then follow the steps above.

Delete and hide photos and videos on iPhone

In the Photos app 🌈, you can delete photos and videos from your iPhone or hide them in the Hidden album. You can also recover photos you recently deleted. When you use iCloud Photos, any changes you make are saved across all your devices.

See Use iCloud Photos on iPhone.

Delete or hide a photo or video

In Photos, tap a photo or video, then do either of the following:

- *Delete:* Tap 🗑 to delete a photo from your iPhone and other devices using the same iCloud Photos account.

  Deleted photos and videos are kept in the Recently Deleted album for 30 days, where you can recover or permanently remove them from all devices.

- *Hide:* Tap ⬆, then tap Hide in the list of options.

  Hidden photos are moved to the Hidden album. You can't view them anywhere else.

  To turn off the Hidden album so it doesn't appear in Albums, go to Settings ⚙ > Photos, then turn off Hidden Album.

Recover or permanently delete deleted photos

To recover deleted photos, or to permanently delete them, do the following:

1. Tap Albums, then tap Recently Deleted under Utilities.

2. Tap Select, then choose the photos and videos you want to recover or delete.

3. Choose Recover or Delete at the bottom of the screen.

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

After you take a photo or video, use the tools in the Photos app 🌈 to edit it on your iPhone. You can adjust the light and color, crop, rotate, add a filter, and more. If you don't like how your changes look, tap Cancel to revert back to the original.

When you use iCloud Photos, any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

Adjust light and color

1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.

2. Tap Edit, then swipe left under the photo to view the effects you can edit such as Exposure, Brilliance, Highlights, and Shadows.

3. Tap the effect you want to edit, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

    The level of adjustment you make for each effect is indicated by the outline around the button, so you can see at a glance which effects have been increased or decreased. Tap the effect button to toggle between the edited effect and the original.
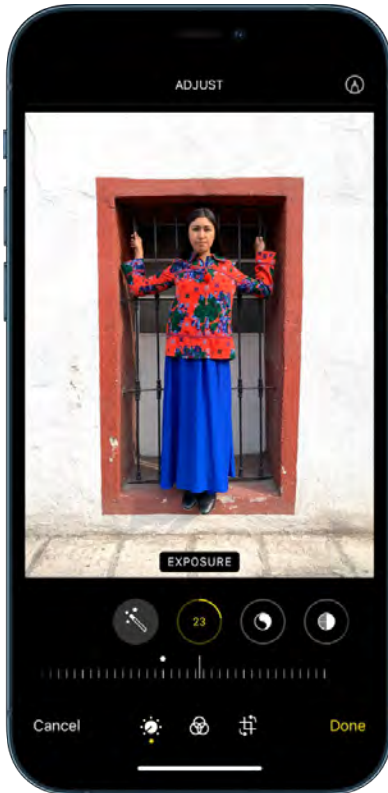
4. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

💡 **Tip:** Tap ⬤ to automatically edit your photos or videos with effects.

Crop, rotate, or flip a photo or video

1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.

2. Tap Edit, tap ⊞, then do any of the following:

- *Crop manually:* Drag the rectangle corners to enclose the area you want to keep in the photo, or you can pinch the photo open or closed.

- *Crop to a standard preset ratio*: Tap ▦, then choose an option such as square, 16:9, or 5:4.

- *Rotate:* Tap ◻ to rotate the photo 90 degrees.

- *Flip:* Tap ⚊ to flip the image horizontally.

Drag to tilt or straighten.

3. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Straighten and adjust perspective

1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.

2. Tap Edit, then tap ⊞.

3. Swipe left under the photo to view the effects you can edit: Straighten, Vertical, or Horizontal.

4. Tap the effect you want to edit, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

   The level of adjustment you make for each effect is displayed by the outline around the button, so you can see at a glance which effects have been increased or decreased. Tap the button to toggle between the edited effect and the original.

5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Apply filter effects

1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.

2. Tap Edit, then tap ⬡ to apply filter effects such as Vivid, Dramatic, or Silvertone.

3. Tap a filter, then drag the slider to adjust the effect.

   To compare the edited photo to the original, tap the photo.

4. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Revert an edited photo

After you edit a photo and save your changes, you can revert to the original image.

1. Open the edited image, tap Edit, then tap Revert.

2. Tap Revert to Original.

Write or draw on a photo

1. In Photos, tap a photo to view it in full screen.

2. Tap Edit, then tap Ⓐ.

3. Annotate the photo using the different drawing tools and colors. Tap ⊕ to magnify or add a caption, text, shapes, or even your signature.

4. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel.

Trim video length and adjust slow motion on iPhone

In the Photos app 🌈, you can trim a video you recorded on your iPhone to change where it starts and stops. You can also adjust the portion of a video that appears in slow motion when you record in Slo-mo mode.

Trim a video

1. In Photos, open the video, then tap Edit.

2. Drag either end of the frame viewer below the video to change the start and stop times, then tap Done.

3. Tap Save Video to save only the trimmed video, or Save Video as New Clip to save both versions of the video.
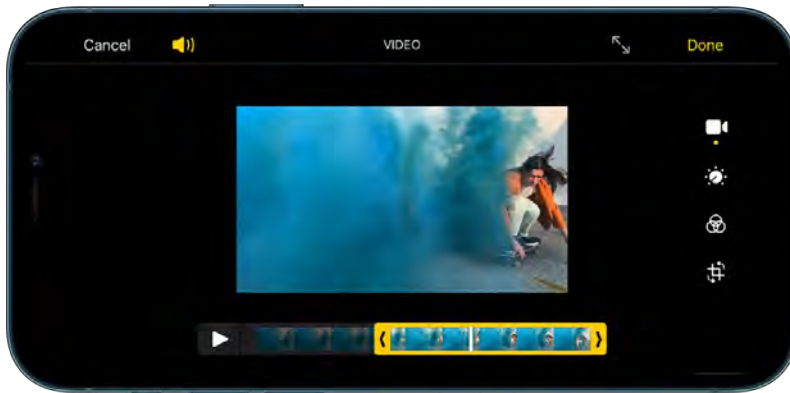
To undo the trim after you save, open the video, tap Edit, then tap Revert.

Note: A video saved as a new clip can't be reverted to the original.

Change the slow-motion section of a video shot in Slo-mo mode

1. Open a video shot in Slo-mo mode, then tap Edit.

2. Drag the white vertical bars beneath the frame viewer to set where the video is played in slow motion.

Edit Cinematic mode videos on your iPhone

On iPhone 13 models, Cinematic mode applies a depth-of-field effect that keeps the subject of your video sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. In the Photos app 🌈, you can change the focus subject where the effect is applied, and adjust the level of background blur—or depth of field—in your Cinematic mode videos. You can also turn off the effect.

Cinematic mode videos recorded on iPhone 13 models can be edited on iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later models with iOS 15.

Turn off the Cinematic effect

1. In Photos, open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap Edit.

2. Tap Cinematic at the top of the screen, then tap Done.

Repeat these steps to turn Cinematic mode back on.

Change the focus subject in a Cinematic mode video

Camera automatically identifies where to focus while you record in Cinematic mode and can automatically change focus if a new subject is identified. You can also change the focus subject manually.

1. In Photos, open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap Edit.

   White dots under the frame viewer indicate where Camera automatically changed the focus while recording. Yellow dots indicate where the focus was manually changed.

2. Play the video, or slide the white vertical bar in the frame viewer, to the point where you want to change the focus.

3. Tap the new subject, outlined in yellow, on the screen to change the focus; double tap to set automatic focus tracking on the subject.

   A yellow dot appears under the frame viewer to indicate the focus was changed.

   Note: You can also touch and hold the screen to lock the focus at a specific distance from the camera.

4. Repeat the steps above to change focus points throughout the video.

   To remove a manual focus change, tap the yellow dot under the frame viewer, then tap 🗑.

5. Tap Done to save your changes.

Tap ⬚ to toggle between Camera's automatic focus tracking and your manually selected focus points.

After you save your changes, you can revert a Cinematic mode video to the original if you don't like your edits. Open the video, tap Edit, then tap Revert.

Adjust the depth of field in a Cinematic mode video

1. In Photos, open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap Edit.

2. Tap 🄵 at the top of the screen.

   A slider appears below the video.

3. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the depth of field effect, then tap Done.

To undo the change after you save, open the video, tap Edit, then tap Revert.

Export Cinematic mode videos to your Mac

You can use AirDrop to transfer Cinematic mode videos—with depth and focus metadata—from your iPhone to your Mac to edit in other apps.

1. In Photos, open the Cinematic mode video, then tap ⬆.

2. Tap Options at the top of the screen, turn on All Photos Data, then tap Done.

3. Tap AirDrop, then tap the device you want to share with (make sure the device you're sharing with has AirDrop turned on).

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Photos, see Edit a Cinematic mode video in Photos on Mac.

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Final Cut Pro, iMovie, or Motion, see the Apple Support article Edit Cinematic mode video in Final Cut Pro, iMovie, and Motion on Mac.

Edit Live Photos on iPhone

In the Photos app 🌈, you can edit Live Photos, change the key photo, and add fun effects like Bounce and Loop.

Edit a Live Photo

In addition to using the photo editing tools (like adding filters or cropping a photo) you can also change the key photo, trim the length, or mute the sound in your Live Photos.
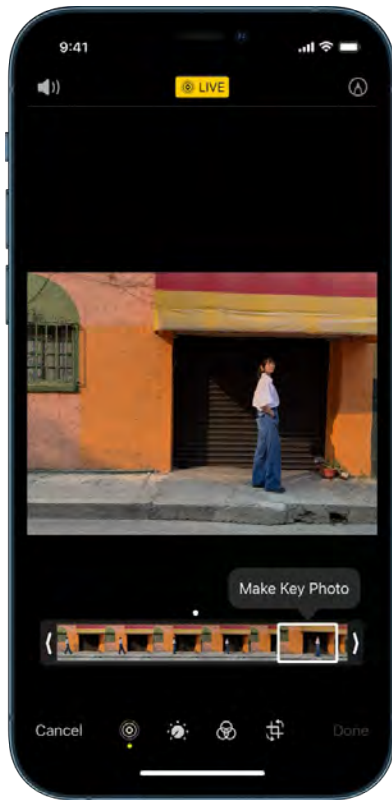
1. Open the Live Photo and tap Edit.

2. Tap ◎, then do any of the following:

   - *Set a key photo:* Move the white frame on the frame viewer, tap Make Key Photo, then tap Done.

   - *Trim a Live Photo:* Drag either end of the frame viewer to choose the frames the Live Photo plays.

   - *Make a still photo:* Tap the Live button at the top of the screen to turn off the Live feature. The Live Photo becomes a still of its key photo.

   - *Mute a Live Photo:* Tap ◀)) at the top of the screen. Tap again to unmute.

See Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera.

Add effects to a Live Photo

You can add effects to Live Photos to turn them into fun videos.

1. Open the Live Photo.

2. Tap ◎ Live in the top-left corner, then choose one of the following:

- *Loop:* Repeats the action in a continuous looping video.

- *Bounce:* Rewinds the action backward and forward.

- *Long Exposure:* Simulates a DSLR-like long exposure effect by blurring motion.

Edit Portrait mode photos on iPhone

In the Photos app 🌈, you can change and adjust the lighting effects of the photos you take in Portrait mode.
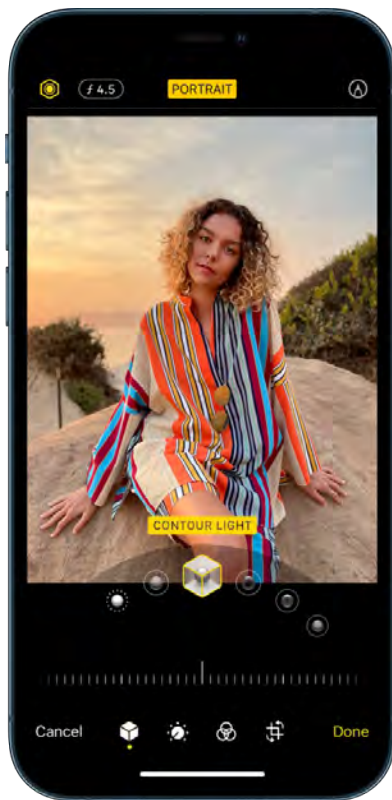
Edit Portrait Lighting effects in Portrait mode photos

On models that support Portrait Lighting, you can apply, change, or remove the Portrait Lighting effects in Portrait mode photos.

1. Tap any photo taken in Portrait mode to view it in full screen.

2. Tap Edit, touch ⬡ below the photo, then drag to choose a lighting effect.

    -   *Natural Light:* The face is in sharp focus against a blurred background.

    -   *Studio Light:* The face is brightly lit, and the photo has an overall clean look.

    -   *Contour Light:* The face has dramatic shadows with highlights and lowlights.

    -   *Stage Light:* The face is spotlit against a deep black background.

    -   *Stage Light Mono:* The effect is like Stage Light, but the photo is in classic black and white.

    -   *High-Key Light Mono:* Creates a grayscale subject on a white background (on supported models).

    Note: On iPhone XR, only the front camera supports Natural Light, Studio Light, and Contour Light.

3. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the intensity of the lighting effect.

4. Tap Done to save your changes.

To undo the Portrait Lighting effect after you save, tap Edit, then tap Revert to go back to the original lighting.

Note: To remove the Portrait effect from a photo, tap Portrait at the top of the screen.

Adjust Depth Control in Portrait mode photos

Use the Depth Control slider (on supported models) to adjust the level of background blur in your Portrait mode photos.

1. Tap any photo taken in Portrait mode to view it in full screen.

2. Tap Edit, then tap ⓕ at the top of the screen.

   A slider appears below the photo.

3. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the background blur effect.

4. Tap Done to save your changes.

Make photo albums on iPhone

Use the Photos app 🌈 to view and organize your photos in albums.
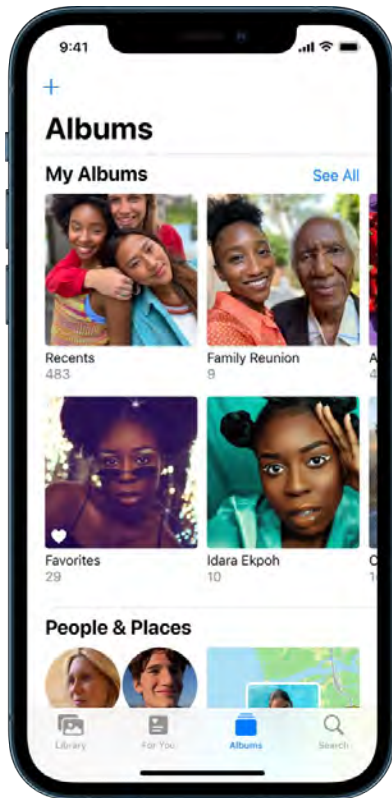
If you use iCloud Photos, albums are stored in iCloud. They're up to date and accessible on devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID. See Use iCloud Photos on iPhone.

Make a new album

1. Tap Albums at the bottom of the screen.

2. Tap ＋, then choose New Album.
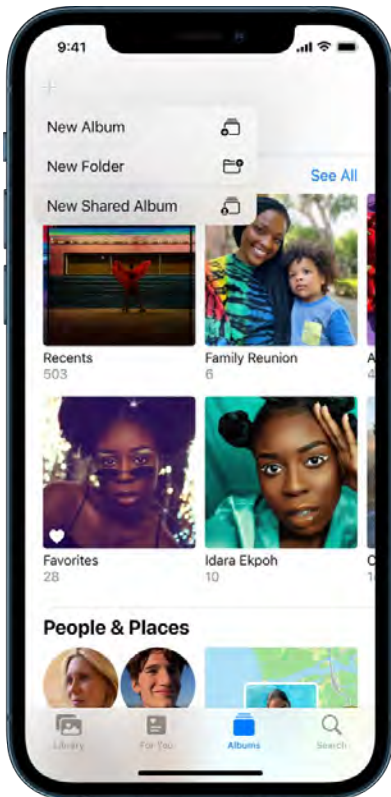
3. Name the album, then tap Save.

4. Tap the photos you want to add to the album, then tap Done.

To create a shared album, see Share photos with Shared Albums in iCloud.

Add photos and videos to an existing album

1. Tap Library at the bottom of the screen, then view your photos by Days or All Photos.

2. Tap Select at the top of the screen.

3. Tap the photos and videos you want to add, then tap ⬆️.

4. Tap Add to Album from the list of actions.

5. Tap the album you want to add to.

Remove photos and videos from an album

1. In an album, tap a photo or video to view it in full screen.

2. Tap 🗑, then remove the item from just the album or the album and your library.

To remove multiple photos or videos from an album, tap Select, tap the photos and videos you want to remove, then tap 🗑.

Edit and organize albums on iPhone

You can rename, rearrange, and delete albums in the Photos app 🌸. You can also create folders to contain multiple albums. For example, you could create a folder named "Vacations," and then create multiple albums within the folder of all your vacations. You can also create folders inside folders.

Rename, rearrange, and delete albums

1. Tap Albums, then tap See All.

2. Tap Edit, then do any of the following:

   - *Rename:* Tap the album name, then enter a new name.

   - *Rearrange:* Touch and hold the album's thumbnail, then drag it to a new location.

   - *Delete:* Tap 🔴.

3. Tap Done.

Albums that Photos creates for you, such as Recents, People, and Places, can't be deleted.

Organize albums in folders

1. Tap Albums, then tap ➕.

2. Choose New Folder.

3. Name the folder, then tap Save.

4. Open the folder, tap Edit, then tap ➕ to create a new album or folder inside the folder.

Filter and sort photos in an album on iPhone

You can filter and sort photos and videos in the albums you create in the Photos app 🌈. For example, you can filter an album to show only videos, only photos, or photos and videos you marked as favorites. You can also sort photos and videos in an album by newest to oldest, oldest to newest, or in a custom order.

Filter photos and videos in an album

1. Open an album, then tap ⋯.

2. Tap Filters, then choose how you want to filter the photos and videos in the album.

3. Tap Done.

Tap to change filter settings.
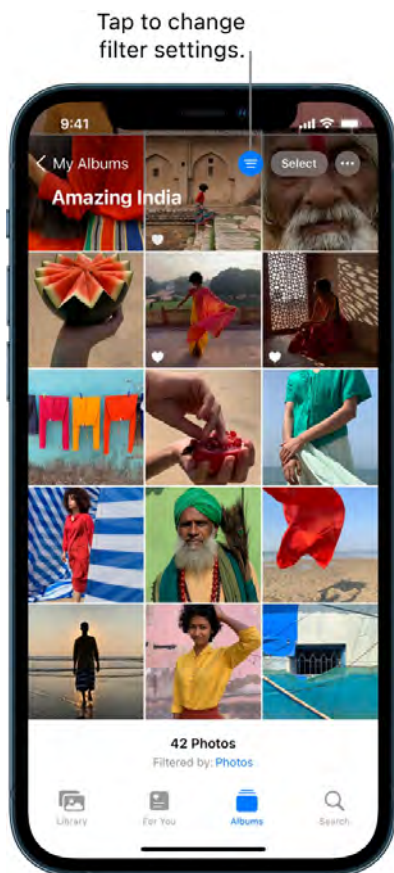
To remove a filter from an album, tap 🔵, tap All Items, then tap Done.

Sort photos and videos in an album

1. Open an album, then tap ⋯.

2. Tap Sort, then choose how you want to sort the photos and videos in the album.
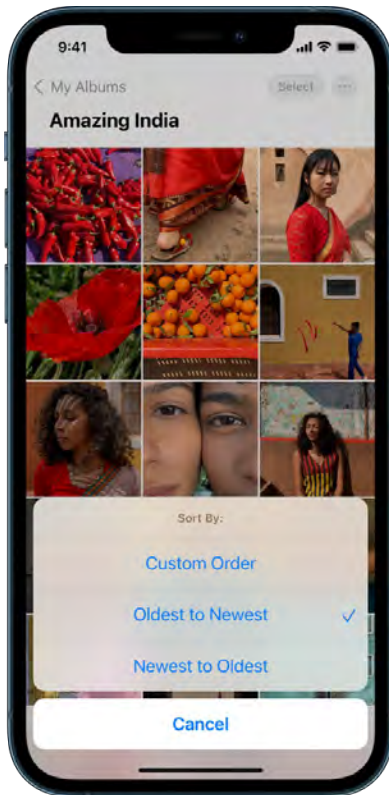
Search for photos on iPhone

When you tap Search in the Photos app 🎨, you see suggestions for people, places, and photo categories to help you find what you're looking for, or rediscover a moment you forgot about. You can also type a keyword into the search field—for example, a person's name, date, or location—to help you find a specific photo.
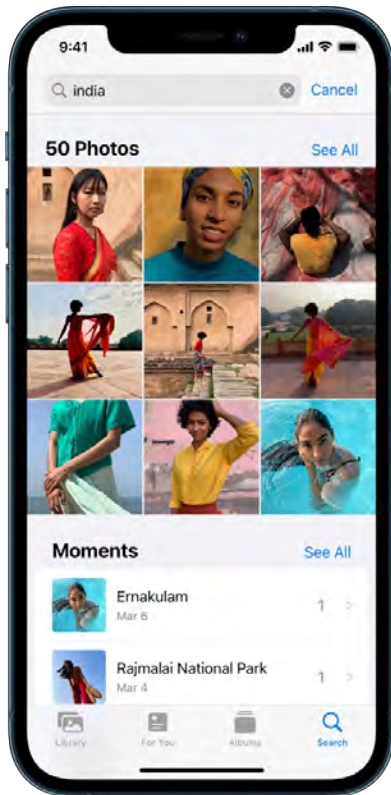
Tap Search, then tap the search field at the top of the screen to search by the following:

- Date (month or year)

- Place (city or state)

- Business names (museums, for example)

- Category (beach or sunset, for example)

- Events (sports games or concerts, for example)

- Person (Lia or Gordon, for example)

- Caption (see See photo and video information)

Looking for something more specific? Refine your search with multiple keywords—simply keep adding keywords until you find the right photo. Search also suggests keywords to add to your search.

Share photos and videos on iPhone

You can share photos and videos from the Photos app 🌸 in Mail or Messages, or other apps you install. Photos even selects your best photos from an event and recommends people you may want to share them with.

Share photos and videos

- *Share a single photo or video:* Open the photo or video, tap ⬆️, then choose a share option.

- *Share multiple photos or videos:* Tap Library, tap All Photos, tap Select, then tap the photos you want to share. Tap ⬆️, then choose a share option.

- *Share photos or videos from a day or month:* Tap Library, tap Days or Months, tap ⚫, then tap Share Photos and choose a share option to share all the photos from that day or month.
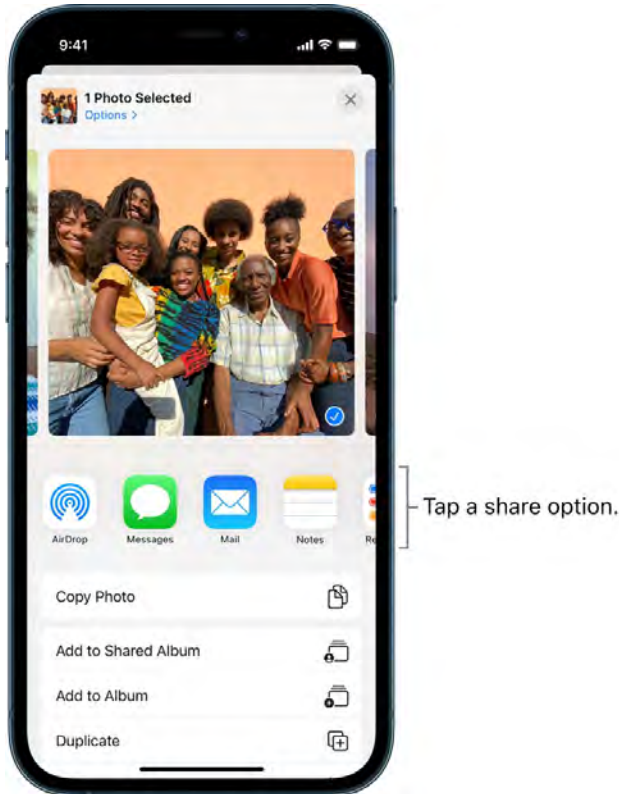
When iCloud Photos is turned on, you can share multiple full-quality photos with an iCloud link. iCloud links remain available for 30 days, can be viewed by anyone, and can be shared using any app, such as Messages or Mail.

You can also use Shared Albums to share photos and videos with just the people you choose. See Share iPhone photos with Shared Albums in iCloud.

Note: The size limit of attachments is determined by your service provider. For devices or services that don't support Live Photos, a Live Photo is shared as a still photo.

Share photos with Sharing Suggestions

Sharing Suggestions recommends a set of photos from an event that you may want to share and, based on the people in the photos, who you may want to share them with. After you share your photos, the recipients are prompted to share their photos from the event with you. iCloud Photos must be turned on to see Sharing Suggestions, but the photos you share can be viewed by anyone.

1. Tap For You, then tap a photo collection in Sharing Suggestions.

2. Tap Select to add or remove photos, then tap Next.

   Photos suggests sharing the photos you took with the people who were also at the event. You can choose who to share with, as well as add others.

3. Tap Share in Messages.

   - *To send the link to more friends, or to stop sharing it:* Tap the collection, tap ⊙, then choose Copy iCloud Link or Stop Sharing.

   - *To remove a photo collection from Sharing Suggestions:* Tap ⊙, then tap Remove Sharing Suggestion.

Save or share a photo or video you receive

- *From email:* Tap to download the item if necessary, then tap 🔼. Or, touch and hold the item, then choose a sharing or saving option.

- *From a text message:* Tap the photo or video in the conversation, tap 🔼, then choose a sharing or saving option. You can also tap ⬇️ in the Messages conversation to save the photo or video directly to your Photos library.

- *From an iCloud link:* Tap ⬇️ in the Messages conversation to save the collection directly to your Photos library. To share the collection, open Photos, tap For You, then tap the collection under iCloud Links. Tap ⊙, then tap Share.

View photos and videos shared with you on iPhone

When a friend shares photos and videos with you using the Messages app, you can easily find them in the Shared with You section in the Photos app 🌸. (Automatic Sharing and Photos must be turned on in Settings ⚙️ > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your Contacts.)
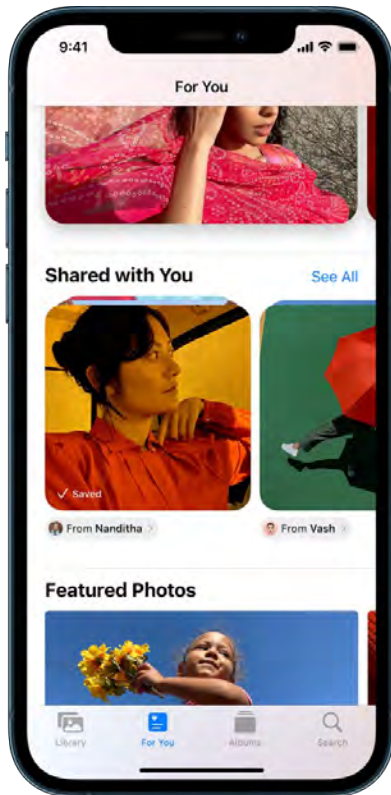
1. Tap For You, then scroll down to Shared with You.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap a photo to view it in full screen, save it to your library, share it, or delete it.

   - Tap See All to view all photos shared with you.

   - Tap the name of the person who shared the photo, then reply to them using the Messages app.

You can also tap Library, then tap All Photos to see photos and videos shared with you in Messages. These photos and videos have a chat bubble in the bottom-left corner of the thumbnail. Tap the thumbnail to share the photo or video, save it to your library, or delete it. To hide photos and videos shared with you in Messages, tap 💬, then tap Your Photos Only.

Note: Photos and videos you don't save from a Messages conversation are deleted in Shared with You and your library if the conversation in Messages is deleted.

To turn off Shared with You, go to Settings 🗂 > Messages > Shared with You, then turn off Photos (green is on).

Interact with photos using Live Text and Visual Look Up on iPhone

When you view a photo in the Photos app 🌈, you can use Live Text to copy and share text within the photo, translate languages, open a website, or make a call. You can also use Visual Look Up to identify and share information about popular landmarks, art, plants, pets, and more found within your photos.

Live Text and Visual Look Up are available on iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later.

Use Live Text

To use Live Text, open a photo, then do any of the following:

- *Identify all Live Text in a photo:* Tap ⊟ to highlight Live Text.

- *Copy text:* Touch and hold a word, move the grab points to adjust the selection, then tap Copy. To select all the text in the photo, tap Select All.

- *Search text on the web:* Touch and hold a word, move the grab points to adjust the selection, then tap Look Up.

- *Translate text:* Touch and hold a word, move the grab points to adjust the selection, then tap Translate.

- *Share text:* Touch and hold a word, move the grab points to adjust the selection, tap Share, then choose how you want to share.

- *Go to a website, address, make a call, or start an email:* Tap the website, address, phone number, or email address.

Live Text isn't available in all regions or languages. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability

Use Visual Look Up

Learn more about popular landmarks, art, plants, flowers, pets, and other objects that appear in your photos (U.S. only).

1. Open a photo in full screen; indicates Visual Look Up information is available for that photo.

2. Swipe up on the photo or tap .

3. Tap the icon that appears on the photo or at the top of the photo information window to view Siri Knowledge and more information about the object.
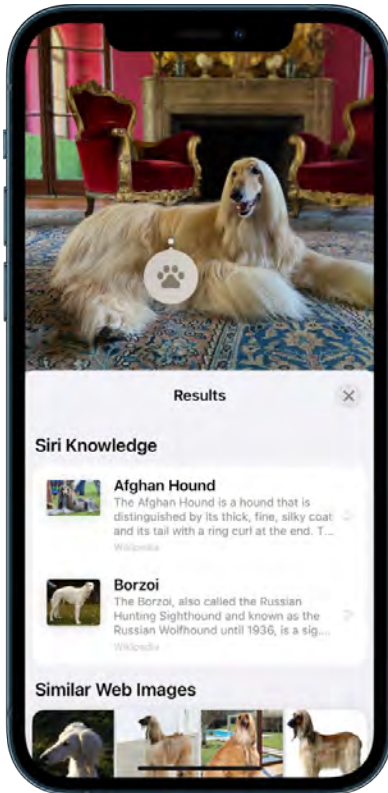
Visual Look Up isn't available in all regions or languages. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability.

View memories in Photos on iPhone

The Photos app ▦ creates personalized collections of your photos and videos called *memories*. Memories feature significant people, places, and events that are curated and set to music based on the content of the memory. You can create memories from photos in your library and share them with your friends and family.

Play a memory

1. Tap For You, then tap a memory to play it.

2. To pause, do either of the following:

   - Touch and hold the screen.

   - Tap the screen, then tap ▐▐.

3. To go backward or forward, do any of the following:

   - Swipe left or right.

   - Tap the left or right side of the screen.

   - Tap the memory, then slide the frames at the bottom of the screen left or right.

Create a memory

You can create your own memory from an event, a specific day in your library, or an album.

1. Tap Library, tap Days or Months, then tap ●. Or, tap Albums, open an album, then tap ●.

2. Tap Play Memory Movie.

Share a memory

1. Tap For You, then play the memory you want to share.

2. While the memory plays, tap the screen, tap ⬆, then choose how you want to share.

Share photos from a memory

You can share multiple or individual photos from a memory.

- *Share multiple photos:* While the memory plays, tap the screen, then tap ⊞. Tap ⬤, tap Select, then tap the photos you want to share. Tap ⬆, then choose how you want to share.

- *Share a single photo:* While the memory plays, tap the screen, then tap ⊞. Touch and hold the photo you want to share, tap ⬆, then choose how you want to share.

Add a memory to Favorites

Tap For You, then tap ♡ in the top-right corner of the memory. Or, while a memory is playing, tap the screen, tap ⬤, then tap Add To Favorites.

To view your favorite memories, tap See All, then tap Favorites.

Personalize your memories in Photos on iPhone

In the Photos app 🌸, you can edit your memories to make them even more personal. Try out Memory mixes, which lets you apply different songs with a matching photographic look. You can also choose new songs, edit the title of a memory, change the length, and remove photos. Apple Music subscribers can add from the millions of songs available in the Apple Music library.

Add a Memory mix

Memory mixes are curated combinations of different songs, pacing, and styles that change the look and feel of a memory.

1. Tap For You, then tap a memory to play it.

2. Tap the screen, then tap 🎶.

3. Swipe left to view different Memory mixes.

4. Tap the screen to apply a Memory mix.

Change the memory music

You can change a memory's music by choosing from memory soundtracks or Apple Music's suggested songs. Apple Music subscribers can also access their Apple Music library and view suggested songs based on musical preferences or the content of the memory.

1. Play a memory, then tap the screen.

2. Tap 🎵, then tap 🎶.

   Apple Music subscribers can tap 🔍 to search for songs in the Apple Music library.

3. Tap a song, then tap Done.

Change the Memory look

Use Memory looks to apply consistent color and style adjustments to all the photos in a memory.

1. Play a memory, then tap the screen.

2. Tap 🎵, then tap ⊛.

3. Tap a Memory look, then tap Done.

Edit the memory title and subtitle

You can change or edit the title and subtitle of a memory.

1. Tap ⬤ in the top-right corner of the memory, then tap Change Title.

2. Enter the new title or subtitle in the text field, then tap Save.

Change the length of a memory

Depending on the number of photos in a memory, you can change the length of a memory to be short, medium, or long.

1. Play a memory, then tap the screen.

2. Tap ⬤, then tap Short, Medium, or Long.

Add or remove photos from a memory

1. Play a memory, then tap the screen.

2. Tap ⬤, then tap Manage Photos.

3. Tap Select All to add all of the available photos, or tap photos without a checkmark to add individual photos. Tap photos with a checkmark to remove them from the memory.

4. Tap Done.

Delete a memory

1. On the For You screen, tap ⬤ in the top-right corner of the memory you want to delete.

2. Tap Delete Memory.

Feature certain content less frequently in Memories

You can make certain people and photos less likely to appear in Memories, Featured Photos, and the Photos widget.

1. On the For You screen, tap ⬤ in the top-right corner of the memory.

2. Tap Feature Less to show fewer photos or memories of a specific person, date, place, or holiday from that memory.

Find people in Photos on iPhone

The Photos app 🌈 uses on-device intelligence to recognize faces in your photos. When you add names to the faces, you can search for photos by name.

Note: With iCloud Photos, your People album is kept up to date on all your devices that meet these minimum system requirements: iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or macOS 10.13. (You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on all the devices.)

Find photos of a specific person

To find photos of a specific person, do either of the following:

- Tap Albums, tap the People album, then tap a person to see all of the photos they're in.

- Tap Search, then enter a person's name in the search field.

Add a person to your People album

1. Open a photo of the person you want to add, then tap ⓘ or swipe up to see the photo details.

2. The people identified in the photo appear in the bottom-left corner of the photo. Tap the face of a person with a question mark next to their picture to identify them.

3. Tap Tag with Name.

4. Type their name, tap Next, then tap Done.

Name a person in your People album

1. Tap Albums, then tap the People album.

2. Tap the face of the person whose name you want to add.

3. Tap Add Name at the top of the screen, then enter the person's name.

4. Tap Next.

5. If a face is identified as two or more people in the People album, tap Select, tap each instance of the person, then tap Merge.

Set a person's key photo

1. Tap the People album, then tap a person.

2. Tap Select, then tap Show Faces.

3. Choose the photo you want to set as the key photo.

4. Tap ⬆️, then tap Make Key Photo.

Fix misidentifications

1. Tap the People album, then tap a person.

2. Tap Select, then tap Show Faces.

3. Tap the misidentified face.

4. Tap ⬆️, then tap Not This Person.

Feature someone less often from the People album

You can make photos of certain people less likely to appear in Memories, Featured Photos, and the Photos widget.

1. Open the People album, then tap the person's thumbnail.

2. Tap 🔵, then tap Feature [*Name*] Less.

3. Choose Feature This Person Less or Never Feature This Person, then tap Confirm.

See Show a person or place less often in Photos to further customize the photos that appear in Memories, Featured Photos, and the Photos widget.

Remove a person from your People album

1. Tap the People album, then tap the person you want to remove.

2. Tap 🔵, then tap Remove [*Name*] from People.

Show a person or place less often in Photos on iPhone

You can have the Photos app 🌸 show certain people, places, days, and holidays less frequently or not at all in your Memories, Featured Photos, and the Photos widget.

Show someone less often in Photos

Choose to show fewer photos of a person (or none at all) in your Featured Photos and Memories and the photos that you see in the Photos widget.

1. Open a photo of the person you want to show less often.

2. Tap ⓘ, tap the person's thumbnail at the bottom of the photo, then tap Feature Less.

3. Choose Feature This Person Less or Never Feature This Person, then tap Confirm.

Note: You can also show less of a person if they appear in your People album. See Feature someone less often from the People album.

Show certain content less often in Memories

1. Tap ⚫ at the top of the memory.

2. Tap Feature Less, then depending on the memory, tap one of the following:

   - Feature a Person Less

   - Feature This Place Less

   - Feature This Holiday Less

   - Feature This Day Less

   - Feature These Days Less

   If you choose Feature a Person Less, select the person you want to show fewer photos of, then tap Next. Choose Feature This Person Less or Never Feature This Person, then tap Confirm.

   💡 **Tip:** To turn off all memories that feature holiday events in your home country or region, go to Settings > Photos, then turn off Show Holiday Events.

Note: If you choose to feature a person less often, but then want to see that person again, you need to reset your Memories settings. Go to Settings > Photos, tap Reset Suggested Memories, then tap Reset to confirm.

Browse photos by location on iPhone

The Photos app 🌸 creates collections of your photos and videos in the Places album based on where they were taken. View photos taken in a specific location, or look for photos taken nearby. See a collection of all your places on a map, or even watch a memory of a certain place.

Browse photos by location

1. Tap Albums, then tap the Places album.

2. Select Map or Grid view.

   Only pictures and videos that have embedded location information (GPS data) are included.

   💡 **Tip:** Zoom in and drag the map to see more specific locations.

See where a photo was taken

1. Open a photo, then swipe up to [see photo information](#).

2. Tap the map or address link to see more details.

   To change the location or address where the photo was taken, tap Adjust. Enter the new location in the search field, then tap the new location under Map Locations.

Look for photos taken nearby

1. Tap a photo to view it in full screen.

2. Swipe up, then tap Show Nearby Photos.

View a location-based memory

1. Tap Albums, tap the Places album, then tap Grid.

2. Find a location with several images, then tap the location heading.

3. Tap ▶.

Use iCloud Photos on iPhone

iCloud Photos automatically uploads the photos and videos you take and stores them in their original format at full resolution. You can access your photos and videos in iCloud Photos on any device where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

To use iCloud Photos, you need a device that meets these minimum system requirements: iOS 8.1, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.10.3, or a PC with iCloud for Windows 7.

Turn on iCloud Photos

Go to Settings 🔘 > [*your name*] > iCloud > Photos, then turn on iCloud Photos.

Save space on your iPhone

iCloud Photos can help you make the most of the storage space on your iPhone. When Optimize iPhone Storage is turned on, all your full-resolution photos and videos are stored in iCloud in their original formats, with storage-saving versions kept on your iPhone as space is needed.

Optimize iPhone Storage is turned on by default. To turn it off, go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > iCloud > Photos, then tap Optimize iPhone Storage.

View and share a full-resolution photo or video

1. Select a photo or video from your photo library, tap Edit, then tap Cancel.

   The full-resolution photo or video downloads automatically.

2. Tap ⬆, then choose how you want to share.

Upgrade your iCloud+ plan

If your uploaded photos and videos exceed your storage plan, you can upgrade your iCloud storage. See Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPhone.

Need more help? See the Apple Support article Set up and use iCloud Photos.

Share iPhone photos with Shared Albums in iCloud

With Shared Albums in the Photos app 🎨, you can share photos and videos with just the people you choose. They can also add their own photos, videos, and comments. Shared Albums works with or without iCloud Photos and My Photo Stream.

Turn on Shared Albums

Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > iCloud > Photos, then turn on Shared Albums.

Create a new shared album

1. Tap Albums, tap ＋, then tap New Shared Album.

2. Give the album a name, then tap Next.

3. Choose people to invite, or type an email address or phone number, then tap Create.

Turn on public viewing in iCloud

1. Tap Albums, then select a shared album.

2. Tap 👥, then turn on Public Website.

When Public Website is turned on, anyone with the iCloud URL can view the album.

Add photos and videos to a shared album

1. Tap Albums, select a shared album, then tap ＋.

2. Select all the items you want to add, then tap Done.

3. Add a comment if you want, then tap Post.

Add or remove subscribers, or turn notifications on or off

Select the shared album, tap 👥, then do any of the following:

- *Add subscribers:* Tap Invite People, then enter the names of the subscribers you want to add.

  Subscribers can add photos and videos to the album. Turn off the Subscribers Can Post button so only you can add photos and videos.

- *Remove subscribers:* Tap the name of the subscriber, then tap Remove Subscriber.

- *Turn notifications off:* Tap the Notifications button. Tap again to turn Notifications on.

Delete photos, videos, and comments from a shared album

You must be the owner of the shared album to delete photos or videos.

- *Delete photos and videos:* In a shared album, tap Select. Select the photos or videos you want to delete, then tap 🗑.

- *Delete comments:* While viewing the comment in a shared photo, touch and hold, then tap Delete.

Rename a shared album

1. In Albums, scroll to Shared Albums, then tap See All.

2. Tap Edit, then tap the name of the album and enter a new one.

Subscribe to a shared album

Subscribe to a shared album

When you receive an invitation, tap ☁️, then tap Accept. You can also accept an invitation in an email.

Note: To use Shared Albums, your iPhone must be connected to the internet. Shared Albums work over both Wi-Fi and cellular networks. Cellular data charges may apply. See Connect iPhone to the internet.

Import photos and videos on iPhone

You can import photos and videos directly to the Photos app 🌈 from a digital camera, an SD memory card, or another iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch that has a camera. Use the Lightning to USB Camera Adapter or the Lightning to SD Card Camera Reader (both sold separately).

---

1. Insert the camera adapter or card reader into the Lightning connector on iPhone.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Connect a camera:* Use the USB cable that came with the camera to connect the camera to the camera adapter. Turn on the camera, then make sure it's in transfer mode. For more information, see the documentation that came with the camera.

   - *Insert an SD memory card into the card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.

   - *Connect an iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch:* Use the USB cable that came with the device to connect it to the camera adapter. Turn on and unlock the device.

3. Open Photos on your iPhone, then tap Import.

4. Select the photos and videos you want to import, then select your import destination.

   - *Import all items:* Tap Import All.

   - *Import just some items:* Tap the items you want to import (a checkmark appears for each), tap Import, then tap Import Selected.

5. After the photos and videos have been imported, keep or delete them on the camera, card, iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

6. Disconnect the camera adapter or card reader.

Print photos on iPhone to an AirPrint-enabled printer

Print your photos directly from the Photos app 🌈 on your iPhone with any AirPrint-enabled device.

- *Print a single photo:* While viewing the photo, tap ⬆️, then tap Print.

- *Print multiple photos:* While viewing photos, tap Select, select each photo you want to print, tap ⬆️, then tap Print.

Podcasts

Find podcasts on iPhone

Use the Podcasts app 🟣 to find shows about science, news, politics, comedy, and more. If you find a show you like, you can *follow* it to add it to your library. Then you can easily listen offline, get notified about new episodes, and more.
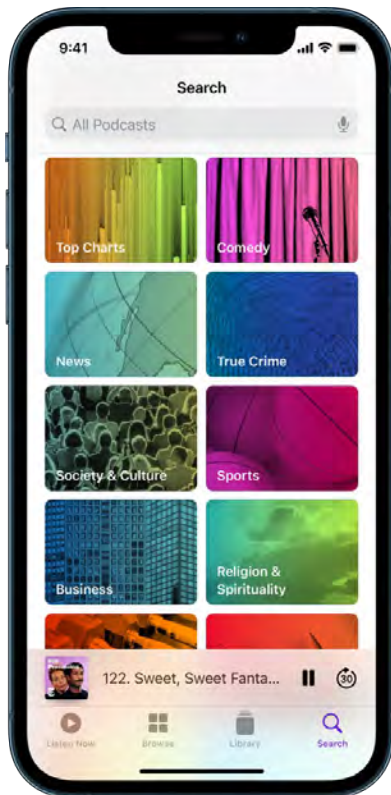
Note: Shows may offer paid subscriptions that give you access to exclusive shows and episodes, new releases, episodes without ads, and more. To manage your subscriptions, see Subscribe to a show or channel on iPhone.

Find podcasts

- *Search by title, person, or topic:* Tap Search at the bottom right of the screen, then enter what you're looking for into the search bar on the top of the screen.

- *Discover new shows:* Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen to see New & Noteworthy, featured shows, and the Apple editorial collections. You can also tap Search to see Top Charts and browse by categories.

  💡 **Tip:** When you listen to episodes, personalized recommendations appear on the Listen Now screen (below Up Next) to help you discover your next show.

- *Add shows by URL:* Tap Library, tap ⚫ then tap Add a Show by URL.

  Note: The URL must be in RSS format.

View shared podcasts

When a friend shares a show with you in Messages, you can easily find it in Shared with You in Podcasts. (Podcasts must be turned on in Settings ⚙ > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your Contacts.)

To view shared Podcasts, tap Listen Now, then scroll to the Shared with You section.

See also See what your friends have shared with you.

Browse episodes within a specific podcast

1. Tap a podcast to see its information page.

2. Scroll to see recent episodes or tap See All (if available).

See also Download, save, and share podcast episodes on iPhone.

Listen to podcasts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app 🎙, you can play an episode, listen to an episode when you're offline, set a sleep timer, and use the playback controls.
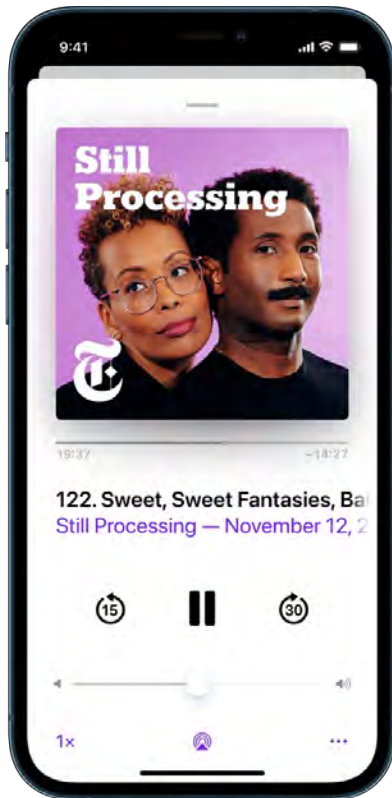
🎤 **Siri:** Say something like: "Play the newest episode of 'The Daily' podcast." Learn how to ask Siri.

Play a podcast

- Tap an episode.

  To pick up where you left off in a show or resume playing a previous episode, tap Listen Now, then scroll to the bottom of the screen and tap an episode below Recently Played.

  💡 **Tip:** To jump to a specific time in the episode, drag the slider below the show's artwork.

Set a sleep timer

You can set a sleep timer so that playback stops automatically after a specified period of time.

1. Tap the player at the bottom of the screen to open the Now Playing screen.

2. Scroll up on the Now Playing screen, tap Sleep Timer, then choose an option.

Use the playback controls

Open the Now Playing screen, then use any of the following controls.

Control	Description
▶	Play
❚❚	Pause
↺ 15	Jump back 15 seconds To change the number of seconds you skip back, go to Settings > Podcasts, then tap Back.
↻ 30	Jump forward 30 seconds To change the number of seconds you skip forward, go to Settings > Podcasts, then tap Forward.
1×	Choose a faster or slower playback speed
⦿	Stream the audio to other devices
•••	Choose more actions such as sharing or downloading the episode

Follow your favorite podcasts on iPhone

When you find a show you like, follow it to add it to your library so you can get notified about new episodes, change the playback order, and more.
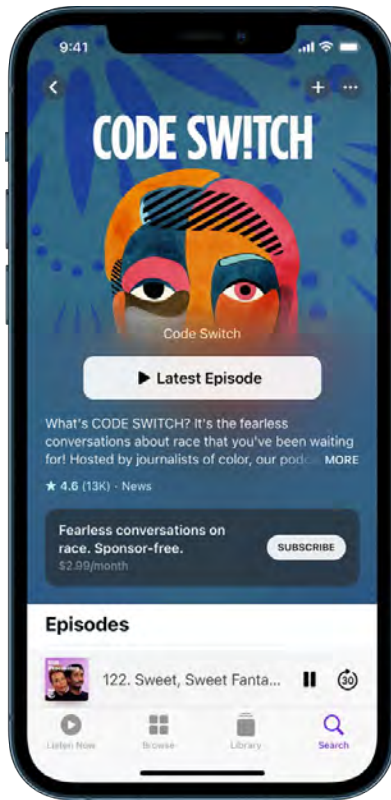
Follow a podcast

When you follow a podcast, it's added to your library.

1. Tap a show to see its information page.

2. Tap ⊕.

   Or you can touch and hold a show's artwork on the Browse tab, then tap Follow.

Unfollow a podcast

1. Tap a show to see its information page.

2. Tap ⬤ in the top-right corner of the screen, then tap Unfollow.

Get notifications for new episodes

Get notified when new episodes are available for podcasts you follow.

1. Tap Listen Now.

2. Tap ⬤ or your profile picture.

3. Tap Notifications, then turn Notifications on or off.

Limit the number of downloads from each podcast

1. Tap Library to see podcasts you follow, then tap a show to see its information page.

2. Tap ⚫, then tap Settings.

3. Tap Limit Downloads, then select an option to limit downloads by number or time.

Organize your podcast library on iPhone

Use Library to customize the podcasts you follow, catch up on the latest episodes, and create your own stations.
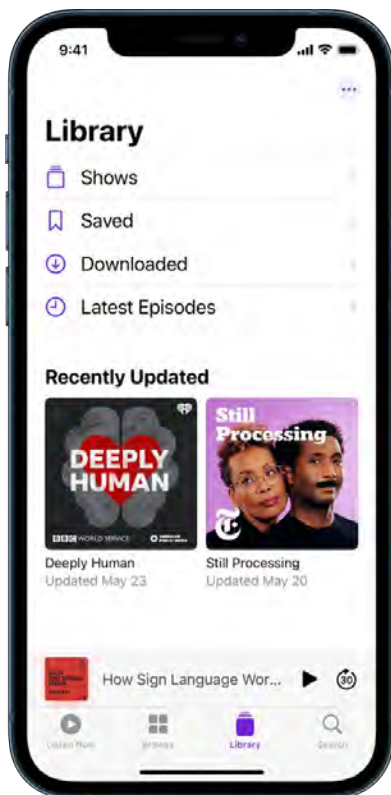
- *Shows:* Tap to see shows that are in your library. If you downloaded or saved individual episodes from podcasts you don't follow, tap All to see them. Tap Followed to view only shows you follow. You can tap any show to see the information page or the episodes in your library.

- *Saved:* Episodes you marked as 🅡 appear in this tab.

- *Downloaded:* Episodes you download appear here. You can listen to these episodes without an internet connection.

- *Latest Episodes:* The most recent episodes from each show you follow are displayed here. To change how long episodes stay in this playlist, tap ⬤.

Filter episodes by unplayed, saved, downloaded, and season

You can filter the episodes by Unplayed, Downloaded, Saved, and Played, and Season.

1. Tap a show to see its information page.

2. Tap Episodes, or the current filter, above the list of episodes.

3. Choose an option, like Unplayed or Season 1.

Note: Some filter options, such as Unplayed, Downloaded, Saved, and Played are only available for shows that you follow or shows with saved or downloaded episodes.

Create your own station

Group your shows into stations (similar to a music playlist) based on themes like news, comedy, or morning commute podcasts. Episodes from the podcasts you choose are automatically added to your station regularly.

1. Tap Library, then tap ⬤ in the top-right corner.

2. Tap New Station, then add a title.

3. Tap Choose Podcasts.

💡 **Tip:** To adjust the number of episodes from each podcast that are added to your station, tap the station you want to change, tap Station Settings, then tap Episodes.

Change the episode playback order

1. Tap Library, then tap a show to see its information page.

2. Tap ⬤, then tap Settings.

3. Choose an option, like Oldest to Newest.

Limit the number of downloads from each podcast

1. Tap Library to see podcasts you follow, then tap a show to see its information page.

2. Tap ⬤, then tap Settings.

3. Tap Limit Downloads, then select an option to limit downloads by number or time.

Mark an episode as played

1. Tap Library, then tap a show.

2. Swipe right on an episode, then tap Played.

If you're already looking at a specific episode, tap ⬤, then tap Mark as Played.

Hide episodes you've already played

1. Tap Library, then tap a show to see its information page.

2. Tap ⬤, then tap Hide Played Episodes.

To automatically hide all episodes you've already played, go to Settings > Podcasts, then turn on Hide Played Episodes.

Download, save, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

In the Podcasts app 🎙, you can download, save, and share podcast episodes.

Save and download an episode

Download an episode so you can play it when you're offline.

1. Tap Library, then tap a show to see its information page.

2. Swipe left on an episode, then tap ⬇ or 🔖.

When you save an episode, it's automatically downloaded so you can listen to it offline. To turn off this option, go to Settings > Podcasts, then turn off Download When Saving.

Remove a downloaded episode

1. Tap Library, then tap a show to see its information page.

2. Swipe left on an episode, then tap Remove Download or Unsave. If you're looking at a specific episode, tap ⬤.

Remove all downloaded episodes from a show

1. Tap Library.

2. Tap Shows, then tap a show to see its information page.

3. Tap ⬤, then tap Remove Downloads.

💡 **Tip:** You can also remove all downloaded episodes from a show by going to Settings 🖼 > General > iPhone Storage > Podcasts, then tapping Edit.

Remove all downloaded episodes

1. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.

2. Tap ⬤, then tap Remove All Downloads.

Share a podcast show or episode

1. Tap Library, then tap a show to see its information page. If you want to share a specific episode of that show, tap the episode.

2. Tap ⬤ in the top-right corner of the screen, then tap Share Show. To share a specific episode of a show, tap ⬤ next to the episode, then tap Share Episode.

Subscribe to a show or channel on iPhone

In the Podcasts app 🟪, subscribe to, change, cancel, and share your podcasts subscriptions. Paid subscriptions allow you to support the shows you love, and they often include premium extras, early access to new episodes, or ad-free listening.

Note: Not all subscriptions and channels are available in all countries, regions, or languages. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to a show or channel

1. Select the show or channel you want to subscribe to.

   When you subscribe to a show, you automatically follow it. See Follow your favorite podcasts on iPhone.

2. Tap the subscription button (if available).

Change or cancel your subscriptions

1. Tap Listen Now.

2. Tap 🔘 or your profile picture, then tap Manage Subscriptions.

3. Tap a subscription to change or cancel it.

Share Apple Podcasts subscriptions

When you subscribe to podcasts channels, you can use Family Sharing to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members will automatically have access to the channels you subscribe to.

If you join a family group and a family group member subscribes to a show you already subscribe to, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing a show subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription or leave or turn off Family Sharing.

See also the Apple Support article Get and manage your Apple Podcasts Subscriptions.

Change your download settings for Podcasts on iPhone

Podcasts you follow are automatically downloaded to your Apple device. Episodes you've played are automatically deleted from your device. You can change those settings, and adjust other download options.

Turn automatic downloads on or off

1. Go to Settings 🎛️ > Podcasts.

2. Turn Enable When Following (under Automatic Downloads) off or on.

💡 **Tip:** To automatically download a particular podcast, open the Podcasts app 🎙️, touch and hold the show's artwork on the Library screen, tap Settings, then turn on Automatic Downloads.

Remove downloaded podcasts after you listen to them

1. Go to Settings 🎛️ > Podcasts.

2. Turn on Remove Played Downloads (under Episode Downloads).

   Or, to adjust this setting for a particular podcast you follow, touch and hold the show's artwork on the Library screen, tap Settings, then turn on Remove Played Downloads.

Limit how much cellular data is used when downloading podcasts

Go to Settings 🎛️ > Podcasts, then choose any of the following:

- *Block downloads over cellular data when downloading podcasts that you follow:* Turn on Block Downloads Over Cellular.

- *Ask to be notified when an episode will use cellular data to download:* Tap Cellular Downloads, then choose an option.

Turn off automatic syncing across Apple devices

By default, your podcasts are kept up to date across all of your Apple devices. You can turn off this setting.

1. Go to Settings 🅰 > Podcasts.

2. Turn off Sync Podcasts.

Reminders

Add reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app 📋, you can easily make to-do lists for things like grocery shopping, tasks around the house, and projects at work. Create subtasks, set flags, add attachments, and more.
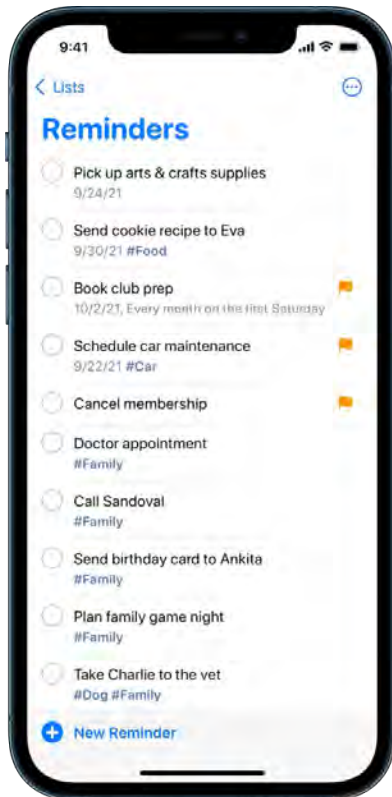
Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use upgraded reminders. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Create a new list

1. Tap Add List, then choose an account (if you have more than one account).

2. Enter a name, then choose a color and symbol for the list.

Add a new reminder

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like: "Add artichokes to my groceries list." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or do the following:

1. Tap New Reminder, then enter text.

2. Use the buttons above the keyboard to do any of the following:

   - *Schedule a date and time:* Tap 📅, then choose when you want to be reminded.

   - *Add a location:* Tap ◁, then choose where you want to be reminded—for example, when you arrive home or get into a car with a Bluetooth connection to your iPhone.

     Note: To receive location-based reminders, you must allow Reminders to use your precise location. Go to Settings ⚙ > Privacy > Location Services. Turn on Location Services, tap Reminders, choose While Using the App, then turn on Precise Location.

   - *Assign the reminder:* (available in shared lists) Tap 👤, then choose a person on the shared list (including yourself).

   - *Set a flag:* Tap ⚑ to mark an important reminder.

   - *Add a photo or scan a document:* Tap 📷, then take a new photo, choose an existing photo from your photo library, or scan a document.

   - *Insert scanned text:* Tap 📷, tap Scan Text, then position iPhone so that the text appears within the camera frame (on supported models with iOS 15.4 or later; in supported languages).

3. To add more details to the reminder, tap ⓘ, then do any of the following:

   - *Add notes:* In the Notes field, enter more information about the reminder.

   - *Add a web link:* In the URL field, enter a web address. Reminders displays a link that you can tap to go to the website.

   - *Get a reminder when chatting with someone in Messages:* Turn on When Messaging, then choose someone from your contacts list. The reminder appears the next time you chat with that person in Messages.

   - *Set a priority:* Tap Priority, then choose Low, Medium, or High.

   - *Move the reminder to a different list:* Tap List, then choose a list.

4. Tap Done.

💡 **Tip:** With OS X 10.10 or later, you can hand off reminders you're editing between your Mac and iPhone.

Create a subtask

Swipe right on the reminder, then tap Indent. Or drag a reminder onto another reminder.

If you complete a main task, the subtasks are also completed. If you delete or move a main task, the subtasks are also deleted or moved.

Mark a reminder as completed

Tap the empty circle next to a reminder to mark it as completed and hide it.

To unhide completed reminders, tap ⊙, then tap Show Completed. To delete the completed reminders, tap Clear.

Delete a reminder

Swipe left on the reminder, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, you can recover the deleted reminder—tap with three fingers or shake to undo.

Edit multiple reminders at the same time

1. While viewing a list, tap ⊙, tap Select Reminders, then select the reminders you want to edit. Or drag two fingers over the reminders you want to edit.

2. Use the buttons at the bottom of the screen to complete, flag, add a date and time, move, assign, or delete the selected reminders.

Organize lists in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app 📋, you can arrange your reminders in lists and groups. Use the default Smart Lists to quickly see reminders that are due today, scheduled, flagged, or assigned to you. You can also easily search all your lists for reminders that contain specific text.
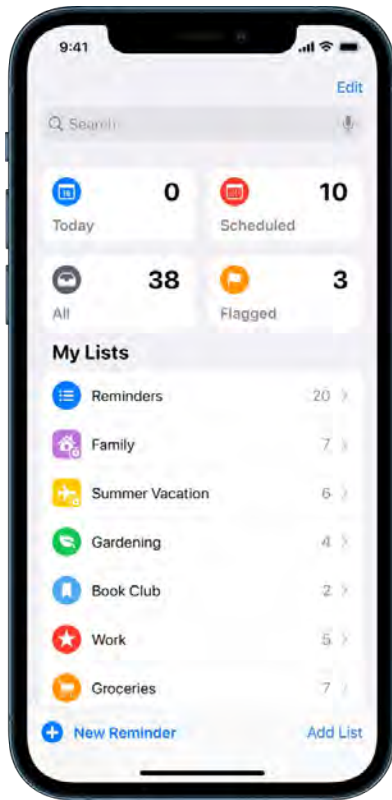
Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use upgraded reminders. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Create, edit, or delete lists and groups

You can organize your reminders into lists and groups of lists such as work, school, or shopping. Do any of the following:

- *Create a new list:* Tap Add List, choose an account (if you have more than one account), enter a name, then choose a color and symbol for the list.

- *Create a group of lists:* Tap Edit, tap Add Group, enter a name, then tap Create. Or drag a list onto another list.

- *Rearrange lists and groups:* Touch and hold a list or group, then drag it to a new location. You can even move a list to a different group.

- *Change the name and appearance of a list or group:* Swipe left on the list or group, then tap ⓘ.

- *Delete a list or group and their reminders:* Swipe left on the list or group, then tap 🗑.

Use the default Smart Lists

Reminders are automatically organized in the default Smart Lists. You can see specific reminders and track upcoming reminders with the following Smart Lists:

- *Today:* See reminders scheduled for today and overdue reminders.

- *Scheduled:* See reminders scheduled by date or time.

- *Flagged:* See reminders with flags.

- *Assigned to Me:* See reminders assigned to you in shared lists.

- *Siri Suggestions:* See suggested reminders detected in Mail and Messages.

- *All:* See all your reminders across every list.

To show, hide, or rearrange the default Smart Lists, tap Edit.

Sort and reorder reminders in a list

- *Sort reminders by due date, creation date, priority, or title:* (not available in the All and Scheduled Smart Lists) In a list, tap ☺, tap Sort By, then choose an option.

  To reverse the sort order, tap ☺, tap Sort By, then choose a different option, such as Newest First.

- *Manually reorder reminders in a list:* Touch and hold a reminder you want to move, then drag it to a new location.

  The manual order is saved when you re-sort the list by due date, creation date, priority, or title. To revert to the last saved manual order, tap ☺, tap Sort By, then tap Manual.

When you sort or reorder a list, the new order is applied to the list on your other devices where you're using upgraded reminders. If you sort or reorder a shared list, other participants also see the new order (if they use upgraded reminders).

Search the reminders in all of your lists

In the search field above the reminder lists, enter a word or phrase.

Use tags and Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app ☷, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your reminders. You can add one or more tags, such as #shopping and #work, to a reminder. Easily search and filter your reminders across lists using the Tag Browser or Smart Lists.

Draft
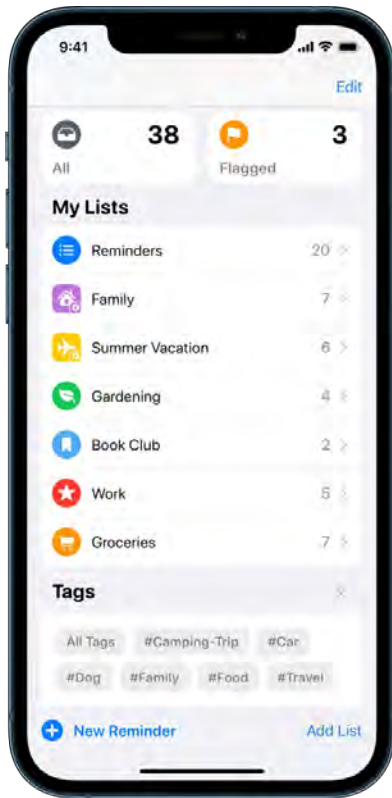
Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use upgraded reminders. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Add tags

When you create or edit a reminder, type # followed by the tag name or choose a tag from the menu above the keyboard. A tag can be only one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to a reminder.

View reminders with tags

In the Tag Browser (below My Lists), tap a tag or All Tags. To filter the list further, tap more tags at the top of the list.

💡 **Tip:** To save this list as a Smart List, tap ⊙, then tap Create Smart List.

Rename or delete a tag

In the Tag Browser (below My Lists), touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.

When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Lists that use it.

Make a custom Smart List

You can create your own Smart Lists to automatically include reminders filtered by tags, dates, times, locations, flags, and priority. You can choose more than one tag (such as #gardening and #errands) and combine them with other filters.

- *Create a new Smart List:* Tap Add List, tap Make into Smart List, choose filters, enter a name, then choose a color and symbol for the list.

- *Convert a list to a Smart List:* When viewing the list you want to convert, tap ⊙, tap Show List Info, scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart List.

  When you convert a list, its items are moved to the top level of the default list and tagged with the name of the Smart List.

  Note: You can't convert a shared list.

Set up Reminders accounts on iPhone

If you use the Reminders app 📋 with different accounts (such as iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, or Yahoo), you can manage all your to-do lists in one place. Your reminders stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts. You can also customize your preferences in Settings.

Add your reminders stored in iCloud

Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Reminders.

Your reminders stored in iCloud—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, and Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Upgrade your reminders stored in iCloud

If you've been using Reminders with iOS 12 or earlier, you may need to upgrade your reminders stored in iCloud to use features such as attachments, flags, list colors and icons, and more.

1. Open the Reminders app.

2. On the Welcome to Reminders screen, choose one of the following options:

   - *Upgrade Now:* Begin the upgrade process.

   - *Upgrade Later:* A blue Upgrade button appears above your lists; tap it when you're ready to upgrade your reminders.

Note: Upgraded reminders aren't backward compatible with the Reminders app in earlier versions of iOS and macOS. See the Apple Support article Upgrading the Reminders app in iOS 13 or later.

Add other Reminders accounts

You can use the Reminders app to manage your reminders from other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Reminders > Accounts > Add Account.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Choose an account provider, then sign in to your account.

   - If your account provider isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add CalDAV Account, then enter your server and account information.

Note: Some Reminders features described in this guide aren't available in accounts from other providers.

To stop using an account, go to Settings > Reminders > Accounts, tap the account, then turn off Reminders. Reminders from the account no longer appear on your iPhone.

Change your Reminders settings

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Reminders.

2. Choose options such as the following:

   - *Siri & Search:* Allow content in Reminders to appear in Siri Suggestions or search results.

   - *Notifications:* Set how you receive notifications, choose the alert style, and have Siri announce notifications.

   - *Accounts:* Manage your accounts and how often data is updated.

   - *Default List:* Choose the list for new reminders you create outside of a specific list, such as reminders you create using Siri.

   - *Today Notification:* Set a time to see notifications for all-day reminders that have been assigned a date without a time.

   - *Show as Overdue:* The scheduled date turns red for overdue all-day reminders.

   - *Mute Notifications:* Turn off notifications for assigned reminders.

Share and assign reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app 📋, use iCloud to share to-do lists. You can collaborate and assign tasks to other people who also use iCloud.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use upgraded reminders. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Share a list using iCloud

You can share a list and collaborate with people who use iCloud. People who accept the invitation can add and edit reminders, and mark reminders as completed.

1. While viewing a list, tap ⊙, then tap Share List.

2. Tap Share Options, then choose whether to allow collaborators to invite other collaborators.

3. Choose how to send your invitation (for example, using Mail or Messages).

Assign reminders in a shared list

When you create or edit a reminder, you can assign it to any person on the list, including yourself. Do any of the following:

- Type @ followed by the person's name or choose a person from the menu above the keyboard.

- Tap ⚇, then choose a person.

💡 **Tip:** To quickly see all reminders assigned to you, use the Assigned to Me Smart List.

Print reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app 📋, you can print a list.

1. View the list you want to print.

2. Tap ⊙, then tap Print.

Safari

Browse the web using Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app 🧭, you can browse the web, view websites, preview website links, translate webpages, and add the Safari app back to your Home Screen if it gets removed. Sign in to iCloud with the same Apple ID on multiple devices to keep your open tabs, bookmarks, history, and Reading List up to date across all your devices.

Pinch open or closed to zoom.

Enter a web address or search term, or quickly access your Favorites.

View open tabs and Tab Groups, or open a new tab.

Open the Share menu for more options.
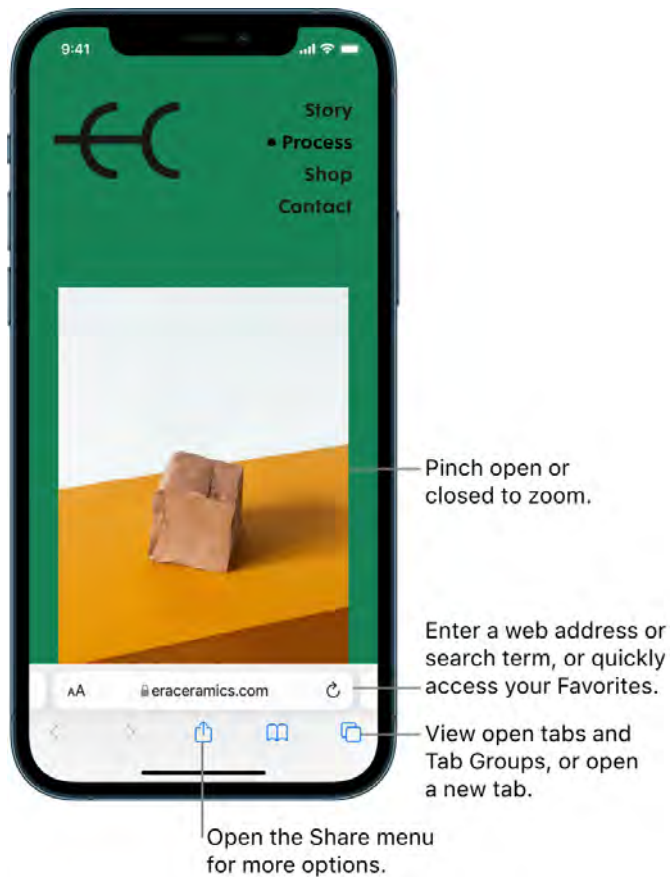
View websites with Safari

You can easily navigate a webpage with a few taps.

- *Get back to the top:* Double-tap the top edge of the screen to quickly return to the top of a long page.

- *See more of the page:* Turn iPhone to landscape orientation.

- *Refresh the page:* Pull down from the top of the page.

- *Share links:* At the bottom of the page, tap ⬆️.

Preview website links

Touch and hold a link in Safari to see a preview of the link without opening the page. To open the link, tap the preview, or choose Open.

To close the preview and stay on the current page, tap anywhere outside the preview.
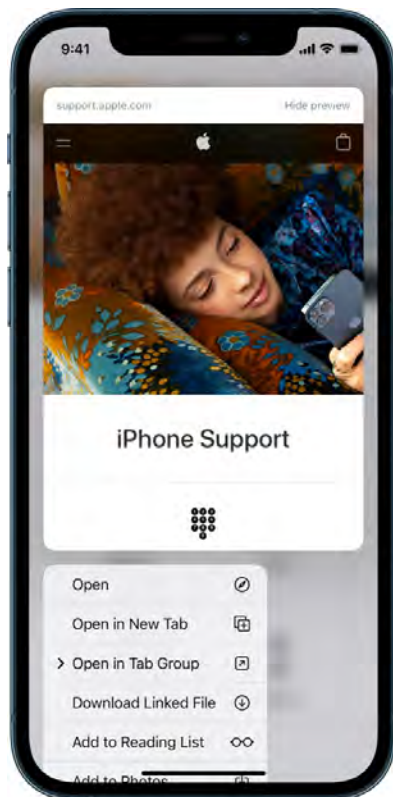
Touch and hold a link to see the URL and these options.

Translate a webpage

When you encounter a webpage that's in another language, you can use Safari to translate the text (not available in all languages or regions).

When viewing a webpage in another language, tap AA, then tap if translation is available.

Add Safari back to your Home Screen

If you don't see Safari on your Home Screen, you can find it in App Library and add it back.

1. On the Home Screen, swipe left to access App Library.

2. Enter "Safari" into the search field.

3. Press and hold , then tap Add to Home Screen.

See also

Search for websites

Move the search field

<div style="text-align: center; color: red;">Draft</div>

Customize your Safari settings on iPhone

In the Safari app 🧭, you can change your Safari layout, customize your start page, change the text size on websites, and change display and privacy settings. Sign in to iCloud with the same Apple ID on multiple devices to keep the tabs you have open, your bookmarks, history, and Reading List up to date across all your devices.

Customize your start page

When you open a new tab, you begin on your start page. You can customize your start page with new background images and options.

1. Tap 🗗, then tap ➕.

2. Scroll to the bottom of the page, then tap Edit.

3. Choose options for your start page.

   - *Favorites:* Display shortcuts to your favorite bookmarked websites. See Add a webpage to your favorites.

   - *Siri Suggestions:* As you search, use Siri to suggest webpages.

   - *Shared with You:* See links shared with you in Messages, Mail, and more. See View links shared with you on iPhone.

   - *Frequently Visited:* Go straight to the websites you visit most.

   - *Privacy Report:* Stay updated on how many trackers and websites Safari blocked from tracking you. See View the Privacy Report.

   - *Reading List:* List pages currently in your Reading List. See Add the current page to your Reading List.

   - *iCloud Tabs:* Show open tabs from other Apple devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID and Safari is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences. See Use tabs in Safari on iPhone.

Note: Your custom start page settings are updated on all your Apple devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID and two-factor authentication is turned on for iCloud. See the Apple Support article Two-factor authentication for Apple ID.

Change text size

Use the Page Settings button to increase or decrease the text size.

1. Tap A A on the left side of the search field.

2. Tap the large A to increase the font size or the small A to decrease it.

Change display and privacy controls

You can switch to Reader, hide the search field, set privacy controls for a website, and more.

Tap AA, then do any of the following:

- To view the webpage without ads or navigation menus, tap Show Reader.

- To set display and privacy controls for a website, tap Website Settings.

Change the layout in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app 🧭, you can choose the layout that works best for you. Depending on the layout, the search field appears at the bottom (Tab Bar layout) or top (Single Tab layout) of the screen.

To choose a layout, do one of the following:

- In the Safari app , tap AA in the search field, then tap Show Top Address Bar or Show Bottom Tab Bar.

- Go to Settings 🔧 > Safari, then scroll down to Tabs. Select either Tab Bar or Single Tab.
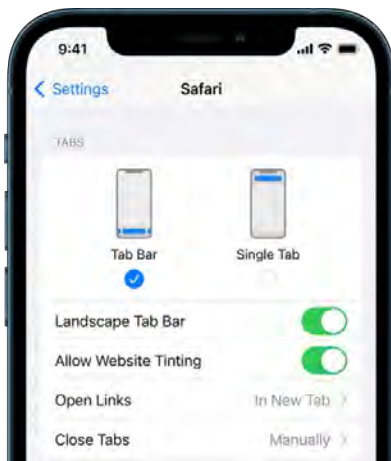
Search for websites in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app 🧭, enter a URL or a search term to find websites or specific information.

Search the web

1. Enter a search term, phrase, or URL in the search field.

2. Tap a search suggestion, or tap Go on the keyboard to search for exactly what you typed.

If you don't want to see suggested search terms, go to Settings 🖼 > Safari, then turn off Search Engine Suggestions.

Find websites you visited before

Safari search suggestions include your open tabs, bookmarks, and pages you recently visited. For example, if you search for "iPad," the search suggestions include your open tabs related to "iPad" and websites related to "iPad" that you bookmarked or recently visited.

Search within websites

To search within a website, enter the name of a website followed by a search term in the search field. For example, enter "wikipedia einstein" to search Wikipedia for "einstein."

To turn this feature on or off, go to Settings 🖼 > Safari > Quick Website Search.

Access your favorite websites when you search or create a new tab

Go to Settings ⚙ > Safari > Favorites, then select the folder with the favorites you want to see.

Search the page

You can find a specific word or phrase on a page.

1. Tap ⬆, then tap Find on Page.

2. Enter the word or phrase in the search field.

3. Tap ⌄ to jump to other mentions.

Choose a search engine

Go to Settings ⚙ > Safari > Search Engine.

Use Camera to search for what you see

You can use your Camera to scan text and search online. See Use Live Text with the iPhone camera.

💡 **Tip:** You can use the same feature to look up text and images in your photos. See Interact with photos using Live Text and Visual Look Up on iPhone.
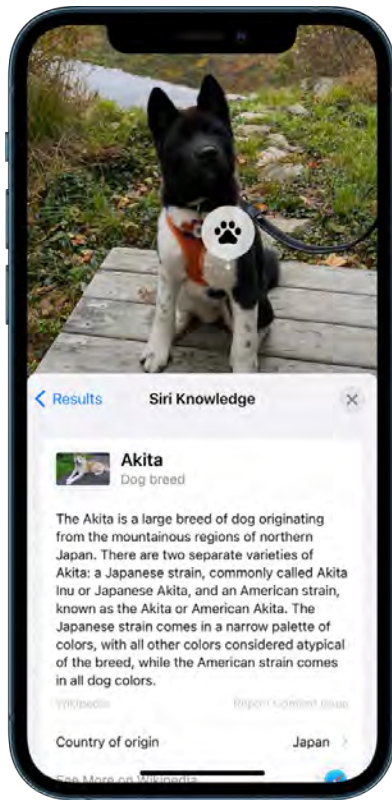
Use tabs in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app 🧭, use tabs to help you navigate between multiple open webpages.

Note: If you're using the Single Tab layout, the menus and other items may look different from what's described in this guide. See Change the layout in Safari on iPhone.

Open a link in a new tab

Touch and hold the link, then tap Open in New Tab.

To stay on the current tab whenever you open a link in a new tab, go to Settings 🔘 > Safari > Open Links, then tap In Background.

Browse open tabs

To look through the webpages you have open, tap ⧉, then do any of the following:

- *Close a tab:* Tap ⊗ in the upper-right corner of the preview.

- *View a single tab again:* Tap a tab, or tap Done.

Reopen a recently closed tab

Tap ⧉, touch and hold ✚, then choose from the list of recently closed tabs.

View tabs that are open on your other devices

1. Sign in to iCloud with the same Apple ID on all your devices.

2. Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Safari.

   Note: To also see tabs open on your Mac, you must have Safari selected in iCloud preferences on your Mac and be signed in with the same Apple ID.

3. Tap ⧉, tap ✚, then scroll to see the tabs open on your other devices at the bottom of the start page.

   To remove a tab from the list, touch and hold the link, then choose Close. This removes the link from your start page without closing the tab on your other device.

   Note: To view tabs open on your other devices, you must have iCloud Tabs turned on for your start page. See Customize your start page.

To change which device displays iCloud tabs on your start page, tap From [*Device name*] and choose from the dropdown menu.

Organize your tabs

Create a Tab Group to keep tabs organized and make them easier to return to later.
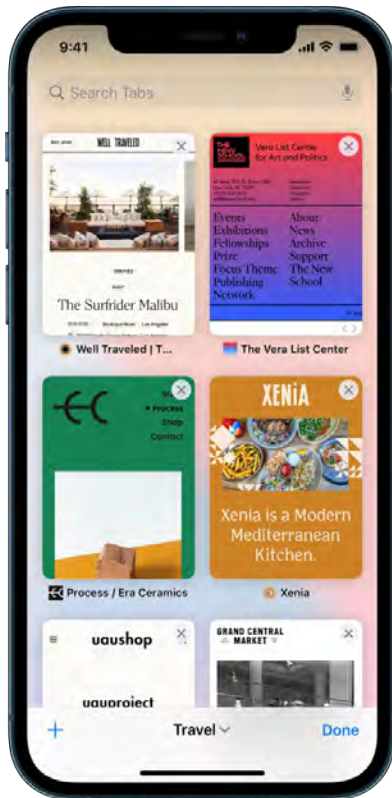
1. Tap ▣ to view your open tabs.

2. Touch and hold a tab, then choose > Move to Tab Group.

3. Tap New Tab Group, then give it a name.

💡 **Tip:** To move between your Tab Groups, tap ⌄ in the bottom center of the screen.

Move a tab to another group

1. Tap ▣ to view your open tabs, then touch and hold the tab you want to move.

2. In the menu that appears, tap Move to Tab Group.

3. Choose one of the Tab Groups you created previously, or create a new group.

Keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across your devices

1. Sign in with your Apple ID on all your devices.

2. Go to Settings 🄰 > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Safari.

    Note: To also see tabs open on your Mac, you must have Safari selected in iCloud preferences on your Mac, be signed in with the same Apple ID, and have two-factor authentication turned on for iCloud. See Set up iCloud on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide and the Apple Support article Two-factor authentication for Apple ID.

Close all your tabs

On any open page, touch and hold ▢, then tap Close All Tabs.

You can also close your tabs from the Tab Overview screen. Touch and hold Done, then tap Close All Tabs.

Bookmark webpages in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app 🧭, you can bookmark websites, add websites to Favorites, or add a website icon to the Home Screen to easily revisit later.

Bookmark the current page

Tap ⬆️, then tap Add Bookmark.

View and organize your bookmarks

1. Tap 📖.

2. Tap Edit, then do any of the following:

    - Create a new folder

    - Delete bookmarks

    - Rename bookmarks

    - Reorder bookmarks
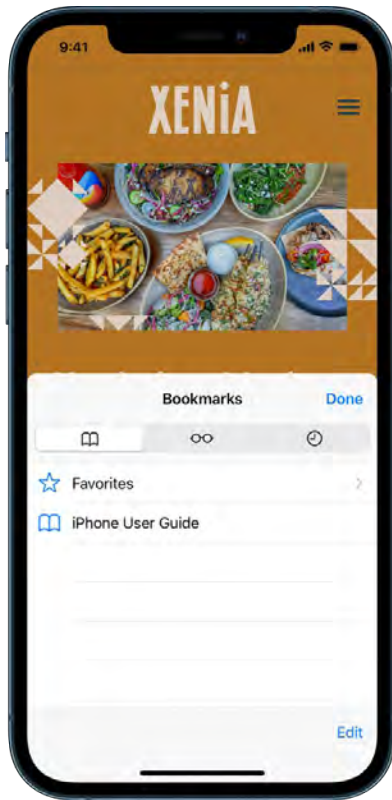
See your Mac bookmarks on iPhone

Go to Settings ⚙️ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Safari.

Note: You must also have Safari selected in iCloud preferences on your Mac and be signed in with the same Apple ID. See Set up iCloud for the Safari app on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

Add a webpage to your favorites

Open the page, tap 🔼, then tap Add to Favorites.

Edit your favorites

1. Tap 📖, then tap Favorites.

2. Tap Edit to delete, rename, or rearrange your favorites.

Add a website icon to your Home Screen

You can add a website icon to your iPhone Home Screen for quick access to that site.

From the website, tap ⬆️, then tap Add to Home Screen.

The icon appears only on the device where you add it.

Save pages to read later in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app 🧭, save interesting items in your Reading List so you can revisit them later. You can even save the items in your Reading List to iCloud and read them later when you're not connected to the internet.

Add the current page to your Reading List

Tap ⬆️, then tap Add to Reading List.
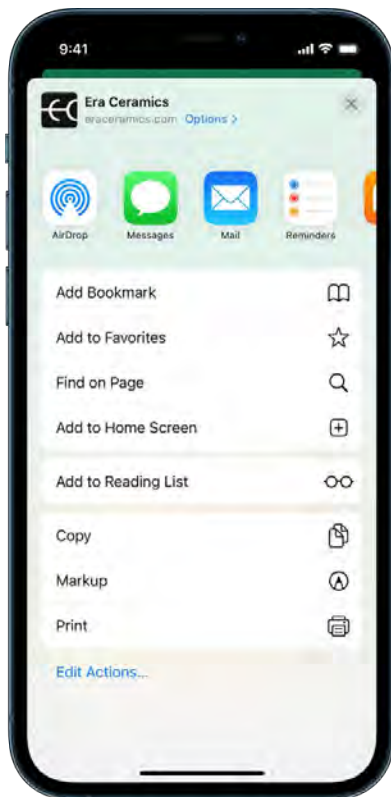
💡 **Tip:** To add a linked page without opening it, touch and hold the link, then tap Add to Reading List.

View your Reading List

1. Tap 📖.

2. Tap 👓.

To delete an item from your Reading List, swipe the item to the left.

Automatically save all Reading List items to iCloud for offline reading

Go to Settings ⚙ > Safari, then turn on Automatically Save Offline (below Reading List).

View links shared with you on iPhone

In the Safari app 🧭, you can easily view and organize the links friends share with you. When a friend shares links with you in a Messages conversation, you can find them in Shared with You in Safari. (Safari must be turned on in Settings ⚙ > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.)

View shared links on your start page

1. Tap ⧉, then tap ＋ to open a new tab.

2. Scroll down, then tap Edit.

3. Turn on Shared with You.

   💡 **Tip:** You can customize where shared links appear on your start page. Touch and drag ≡ to reorder your start page.

Open shared links in Safari

You can view links shared with you in Messages on your start page.

1. Tap ⧉, then tap ＋.

2. Scroll down to Shared with You.

💡 **Tip:** You can see who shared the link with you listed below each preview. Tap the button below the link preview to open the Messages conversation that contains the link.

Remove shared links from Shared with You

1. Touch and hold the preview image of the link you want to remove.

2. Tap Remove Link.

Move a shared link to a Tab Group

1. Touch and hold the preview image of the link you want to move, then tap Open in Tab Group.

2. Choose a Tab Group, or tap New Tab Group to create one.

Annotate a webpage

You can mark up a webpage, highlight your favorite parts, draw and write notes, and share your document as a PDF with others.

1. Tap ⬆.

2. Tap Markup Ⓐ, then choose a tool.

3. Tap Done, then follow the onscreen instructions to save your annotated page as a PDF.

To learn more about Shared with You, see Use Messages to receive and share content with friends on iPhone.

Automatically fill in your information on Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app 🧭, use AutoFill to automatically fill in credit card information, contact information, and user names and passwords.

Set up AutoFill

You can save your personal information or credit card number on your iPhone to speed up filling in online forms and making purchases.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Safari > AutoFill.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Set up contact info:* Turn on Use Contact Info, tap My Info, then choose your contact card. The contact information from that card is entered when you tap AutoFill on Safari webpages in the future.

   - *Set up credit card info:* Turn on Credit Cards, tap Saved Credit Cards, then tap Add Credit Card. Enter your credit card information into the fields provided or tap Use Camera to enter the information without typing.

You can also save the credit card information when you make an online purchase. See Make your passwords available on all your devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain.

Fill in your contact information automatically

You can quickly add your personal information to online forms using AutoFill.

1. In a form on a website that supports AutoFill, tap a blank field.

2. Tap AutoFill Contact above the keyboard, then select a contact.

3. Tap any field to make changes.

4. When all the information is correct, tap Done.

5. Follow the onscreen instructions to submit the form.

Note: You can AutoFill another person's information from your contact list. For example, if you're purchasing a gift and shipping it to a friend, you can use AutoFill to enter their address. Tap AutoFill Contact, tap Other Contact, then choose their contact card.

Fill in your credit card information automatically

After you add a credit card, you can use AutoFill to make online purchases without having to enter your full credit card number.

1. Tap the credit card information field, then tap AutoFill Credit Card above the keyboard.

2. Tap the saved credit card you want to use, or tap Use Camera to take a picture of the front of the card.

3. Enter your card's security code (for security purposes, this code isn't stored—you must enter it manually each time you use a card).

For greater security of your credit card information, use a passcode for iPhone.

Turn off AutoFill

You can turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information, and for passwords. This is helpful in situations where you don't want your contact or credit card information to be readily available—for example if you share a device with others.

- *Turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information:* Go to Settings 🔘 > Safari > AutoFill, then turn off either option.

- *Turn off AutoFill for passwords:* Go to Settings > Passwords, unlock the screen, tap AutoFill Passwords, then turn off AutoFill Passwords.

Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app 🧭, you can install extensions to customize the way your browser works. For example, extensions can help you find coupons when shopping, block content on websites, give you access to features from other apps, and more.
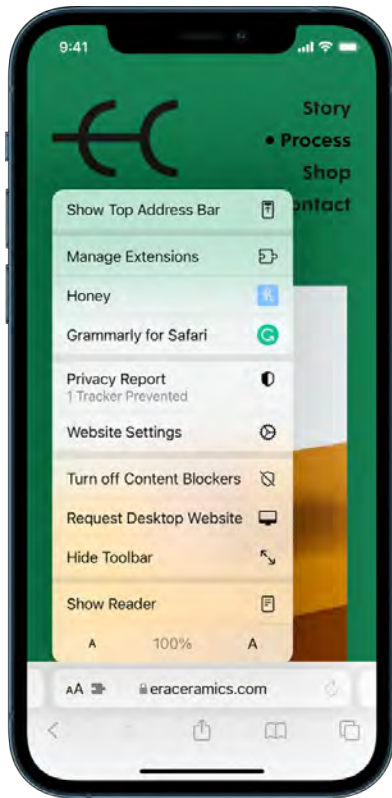
View and add Safari extensions

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Safari, then tap Extensions.

2. Tap More Extensions to browse extensions from the App Store.

3. When you find one you want, tap the price, or if the app is free, tap Get, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: Any extensions you install for Safari on iPhone only appear on that device. To add extensions on your Mac, see Get extensions to customize Safari in the macOS User Guide.

Manage your extensions

Tap A͟A on the left side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions. Select or deselect each extension to turn that extension on or off.

Use extensions

Extensions access the content of the websites you visit. You can change how much access you give each extension:

1. Tap AA on the left side of the search field, then tap the extension you want to give permissions to.

2. Choose how much access to give each extension.

   Important: Check which extensions you have installed and make sure you are familiar with what they do.

Remove an extension

1. Swipe down on the Home Screen, then search for the extension you want to remove.

2. Touch and hold the extension icon, tap Delete app, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Hide ads and distractions in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app 🧭, use Reader to hide ads, navigation menus, or other distracting items.
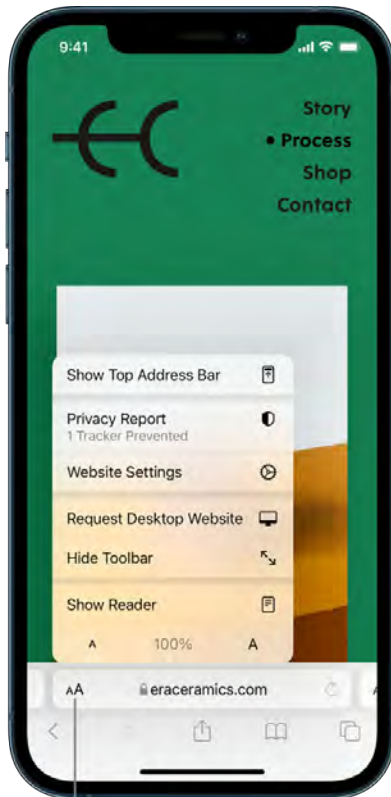
Tap to view the page in Reader.

Show Reader

Reader formats a webpage to show just the relevant text and images.

Tap AA, then tap Show Reader.

To return to the full page, tap AA, then tap Hide Reader.

Note: If Show Reader is dimmed, Reader isn't available for that page.

Automatically use Reader for a website

1. On a supported website, tap AA, then tap Website Settings.

2. Turn on Use Reader Automatically.

Note: To automatically use Reader for all websites that support it, go to Settings 🌐 > Safari > Reader.

Block pop-ups

Go to Settings 🌐 > Safari, then turn on Block Pop-ups.

Browse privately in Safari on iPhone

You can view the Privacy Report and adjust settings in the Safari app 🧭 to keep your browsing activities private, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

Visit sites without making history

You can use Private Browsing Mode to open private tabs, which don't appear in History on iPhone or in the list of tabs on your other devices.

1. Tap ⧉.

2. Tap ⌄ in the bottom center of the Tab bar at the bottom of the screen, then tap Private.

   The tab is automatically added to a Tab Group called Private. You can open multiple private tabs in the group.

You can easily confirm that you're in Private Browsing Mode by checking that the search field bar is gray or displays the word Private.

To hide the sites and exit Private Browsing Mode, tap ⧉, then tap ⌄ to open a different Tab Group from the menu at the bottom of your screen. The private sites reappear the next time you use Private Browsing Mode.

To close private tabs, tap ⧉, then swipe left each of the tabs you want to close.

View the Privacy Report

Safari helps prevent trackers from following you across websites and viewing your IP address. You can review the Privacy Report to see a summary of trackers that have been encountered and prevented by Intelligent Tracking Prevention on the current webpage you're visiting. You can also review and adjust Safari settings to keep your browsing activities private from others who use the same device, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

To view the Privacy Report, tap AA, then tap Privacy Report ▯.

Use iCloud Private Relay to browse the web with more privacy

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use iCloud Private Relay (beta) to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is turned on, the traffic leaving your iPhone is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and location and network providers from collecting your browsing activity. A website or a network provider won't simultaneously know both who you are and what websites you visit. See Turn on iCloud Private Relay.

Control privacy and security settings for Safari

Go to Settings ⚙ > Safari, then below Privacy & Security, turn any of the following on or off:

- *Prevent Cross-Site Tracking:* Safari limits third-party cookies and data by default. Turn this option off to allow cross-site tracking.

- *Hide IP address:* Safari automatically protects your IP address from known trackers. For eligible iCloud+ subscribers, your IP address is protected from trackers and websites as you browse in Safari. If this option is off, your IP address isn't hidden.

- *Block All Cookies:* Turn this option on to prevent websites from adding cookies to your iPhone. (To remove cookies already on iPhone, go to Settings > Safari > Clear History and Website Data.)

- *Fraudulent Website Warning:* Safari displays a warning if you're visiting a suspected phishing website. Turn this option off if you don't want to be warned of fraudulent websites.

- *Privacy Preserving Ad Measurement:* This prevents websites from viewing your personal information to serve you targeted ads.

- *Check for Apple Pay:* Websites that use Apple Pay can check to see if you have Apple Pay enabled on your device. Turn this option off to prevent websites from checking if you have Apple Pay.

When you visit a website using Safari that isn't secure, a warning appears in the Safari search field.

Clear your cache in Safari on iPhone

You can erase your browsing history and data to clear the cache on your iPhone. This removes the history of websites you visited and recent searches from your device. It also removes the cookies and permissions you granted to websites to use your location or send you notifications.

Note: Clearing your browsing history in Safari doesn't clear any browsing histories kept independently by websites you visited.

Go to Settings 🎛 > Safari, then tap Clear History and Website Data.

Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms on the web or signing up for newsletters.

1. When you're asked for your email address on a website, tap the email field.

2. Tap Hide My Email above the keyboard.

   The Hide My Email screen suggests a new, randomly generated Hide My Email address.

3. If you don't want to use the suggested address, tap ↻ to get a new randomly generated email address.

4. To use the suggested address, tap Continue.

You can delete the Hide My Email address at any time. See Create and manage Hide My Email in Settings.

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

The Shortcuts app 🔲 lets you automate tasks you do often with just a tap or by asking Siri. Create shortcuts to get directions to the next event in your Calendar, move text from one app to another, and more. Choose ready-made shortcuts from the Gallery or build your own using different apps to run multiple steps in a task.

To learn more, see the Shortcuts User Guide.
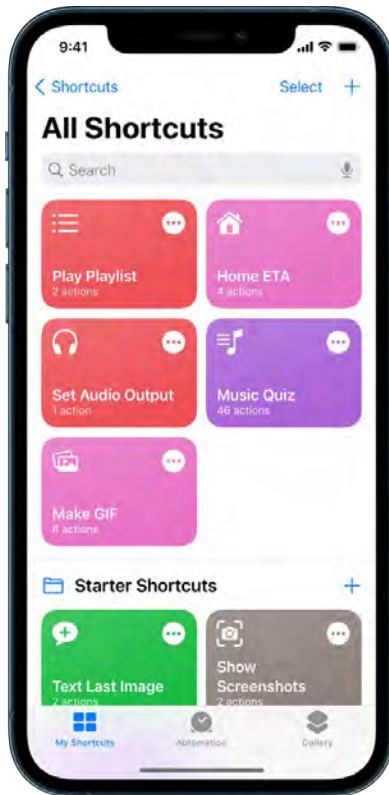
Check stocks on iPhone

Use the Stocks app 📈 to track market activity, view the performance of stocks you follow, and get the latest business news.

🎤 **Siri:** Say something like: "How are the markets doing?" or "How's Apple stock today?" **Learn how to ask Siri**.

Manage your watchlist

Add the stocks you follow to your watchlist to quickly view price, daily price and percentage changes, and market capitalization values.
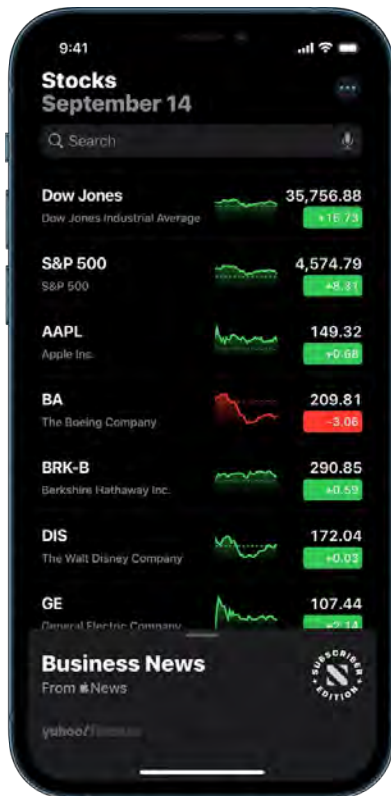
- *Add a symbol to your watchlist:* In the search field, enter a stock symbol, company name, fund name, or index. In the search results, tap the symbol you want to add, then tap Add or Add to Watchlist. Or, tap 🔵, tap Edit Watchlist, then follow the same steps.

- *Delete a symbol:* Swipe left on the symbol in your watchlist, then tap 🗑. Or, tap 🔵, tap Edit Watchlist, tap 🔴 next to the symbol, then tap 🗑.

- *Reorder symbols:* Touch and hold a symbol in your watchlist, then drag it into a new position. Or, tap 🔵, tap Edit Watchlist, touch and hold ≡, then drag the symbol to a new position.

- *Show currency:* Tap 🔵, then tap Show Currency to display the currency the symbol is traded in (iOS 15.2 or later).

View stock charts, details, and news

Tap a stock symbol in your watchlist to view an interactive chart, additional details, and related news stories.

- *See the performance of a stock over time:* Tap an option from the time range selections at the top of the chart.

- *See the value for a specific date or time:* Touch and hold the chart with one finger.

- *See the difference in value over time:* Touch and hold the chart with two fingers.

- *See more details:* Swipe the data below the chart to see additional stock details like 52-week high and low, Beta, EPS, and average trading volume.

- *Read news:* Swipe up to see additional news stories, then tap a story.

To return to your watchlist, tap ⊗.

View your watchlist across devices

You can view your watchlist across your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac when you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

On your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch, go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Stocks.

On your Mac, choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then do one of the following:

- *macOS 10.15 or later:* Click Apple ID, select iCloud, then turn on Stocks.

- *macOS 10.14 or earlier:* Select iCloud, then turn on Stocks.

Read business news

Swipe up on Business News or Top Stories to view stories that highlight the current news driving the market. Stories about companies in your watchlist are grouped by ticker symbol. In countries where Apple News is available, you also see stories selected by the Apple News editors and stories from Apple News+. (Apple News and Apple News+ content is not available in all countries or regions.)

Note: If you tap an Apple News+ story and you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, tap the subscribe or free trial button, then follow the onscreen instructions. To learn more about Apple News+, see Subscribe to Apple News+.

Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, you have these options:

- *Return to your newsfeed in Stocks*: Tap ‹ or Done in the top-left corner.

- *See more stories from the publication in Apple News*: Tap the publisher logo at the top of the screen.

- *Save the story to Apple News*: Tap ⎗ in the top-left corner.

  Note: To save stories to Apple News, make sure to sign in with your Apple ID, then go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on News.

- *Change the text size*: Tap ₐA in the top-right corner, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story.

- *Share the story*: Tap ⬤ in the top-right corner, tap Share Story, then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

Stories from publications you have blocked in Apple News don't appear in the newsfeed. See [See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone](#).

Play audio stories

Some news stories include an audio version that you can listen to in the Stocks app or listen to later in the News app (iOS 15.4; not available in all countries or regions).

1. To listen to the audio version of a story, tap Play Now. Or, tap the story to read it, then tap Play Now at the top of the story.

2. Use the mini player at the bottom of the screen to pause the story or jump back 15 seconds. To open the full-screen player, tap the mini player.

3. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.

4. To close the mini player, touch and hold the player, then tap Close Audio Player.

If you [subscribe to Apple News+](#), you can add an audio story from the Stocks app to your Up Next queue in News.

- *Add from a Stocks newsfeed*: Touch and hold the story, tap Play Later in News, then choose Play Next or Play Last.

- *Add from the story*: Open the story, then touch and hold Play Now at the top of the story. Tap Play Later in News, then choose Play Next or Play Last.

Note: To add stories to News, make sure to sign in with your Apple ID, then go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on News.

Add a Stocks widget to your iPhone Home Screen

Use a Stocks widget to check stocks at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. Choose Watchlist to monitor several symbols from your watchlist on your Home Screen, or Symbol to monitor the performance of a single symbol. See [Add a widget to your Home Screen](#).

Get tips on iPhone

In the Tips app 💡, see collections of tips that help you get the most from iPhone.
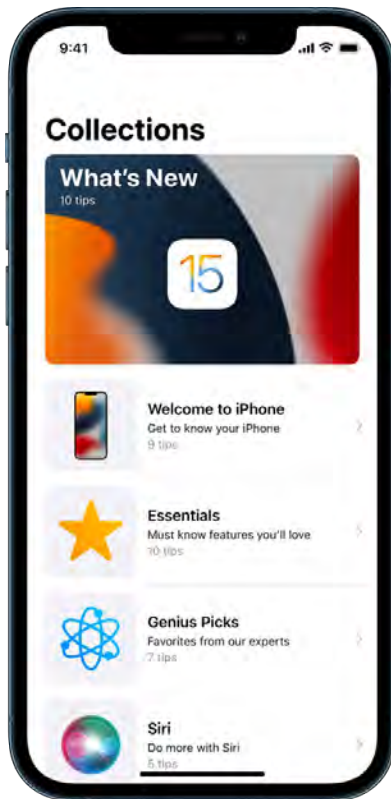
Get Tips

In the Tips app, tap a collection to learn how to take screenshots, use dictation, personalize Siri's voice, and much more. New tips are added frequently.

Get notified when new tips arrive

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Notifications.

2. Tap Tips below Notification Style, then turn on Allow Notifications.

3. Choose options for the location and style of tip notifications, when they should appear, and more.

Translate

Translate text, voice, and conversations on iPhone

In the Translate app 🖼, you can translate text, voice, and conversations between any of the supported languages. You can download languages to translate entirely on device, even without an internet connection.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Translate text or your voice

1. Tap Translation, select the languages to translate between, then do any of the following:

   - Tap "Enter text", type a phrase, then tap Go.

   - Tap 🎤, then say a phrase.

2. When the translation is shown, do any of the following:

   - *Play the audio translation:* Tap ▶.

   - *Save the translation as a favorite:* Tap ☆.

   - *Look up a word in the dictionary:* Tap 📖, then tap a word to see its definition.

   - *Show the translation to someone else:* Tap ↖↘.

   💡 **Tip:** To view your recent history, swipe the translation down.

Translate a conversation

iPhone shows the translated text bubbles from both sides of the conversation. Conversations work for downloaded languages when you don't have an internet connection or On-Device Mode is turned on.

1. Tap Conversation.

2. Tap 🎤, then speak in one of the two languages.

💡 **Tip:** You can translate a conversation without tapping the microphone button before each person speaks. Tap •••, tap Auto Translate, then tap 🎙 to start the conversation. iPhone automatically detects when you start speaking and when you stop.

When chatting face-to-face, tap ⬛, then tap Face to Face so that each person can see the conversation from their own side.

Download languages for offline translation or On-Device Mode

Download languages to translate when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Translate.

2. Tap Downloaded Languages, then tap ⬇ next to the languages you want to download.

3. Turn On-Device Mode on.

Translate text in apps and using the camera on iPhone

You can translate text in apps such as Photos, Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more. You can also use the iPhone camera to translate text around you.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Translate text in apps

You can select any text to translate in apps such as Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more. When you enter text on your iPhone, you can even replace what you wrote with a translation.

1. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate. (If you don't see it, tap ▶ to see more options.)

2. Below the text translation, you can tap any of the following:

   - *Replace with Translation:* Replace your original text with the translation (available only when entering text).

   - *Copy Translation:* You can paste the translation somewhere else, such as a different app.

   - *Change Language:* Choose any of the supported languages for the original text and the translation.

   - *Add to Favorites:* See the list of your favorite translations in the Translate app 🖼.

   - *Open in Translate:* Do more with the translation in the Translate app.

Translate text in photos

On supported models, when you view a photo with text, tap ⊟, select the text to translate, then tap Translate.

Translate what you see through the camera

On supported models, you can translate text using the iPhone camera.

1. Open the Camera app ⬛, then position iPhone so that the text appears on the screen.

2. After the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap ⊟.

3. Select the text to translate, then tap Translate.

TV

Set up the Apple TV app on iPhone

With the Apple TV app ⬛, you can watch original shows and movies from Apple TV+ as well as your other favorite shows, movies, and sports. You can also add Apple TV channels such as Paramount+ and Showtime, watch titles from streaming services and cable providers, and purchase or rent movies and TV shows. The Apple TV app is on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, so you can watch at home or wherever you go.

Note: The availability of the Apple TV app and its features and services (such as Apple TV+, Apple TV channels, sports, and supported apps) varies by country or region. See the Apple Support articles Availability of Apple Media Services and Availability of supported apps in the Apple TV app.

Subscribe to Apple TV channels

You can subscribe to Apple TV+ and other premium channels—such as Paramount+ and Showtime—all in one place. If you use Family Sharing, up to five other family members can share the subscription for no additional charge.

1. Tap Watch Now, scroll down to the Channels row, then tap a channel.

2. Tap the subscription button, review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

After you subscribe, you can stream content on demand or download it to watch offline.

Change or cancel your subscriptions to Apple TV channels

1. Tap Watch Now, then tap 🔵 or your profile picture at the top right.

2. Tap Manage Subscriptions.

Connect video streaming apps

The Apple TV app recommends new content or the next episode in a series you watch from a connected app (supported streaming apps only). Connected apps appear in the Apple TV app on all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

To connect or disconnect supported streaming apps, do the following:

1. Tap Watch Now, then tap 🔵 or your profile picture at the top right.

2. Tap Connected Apps.

Add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app

Single sign-on provides immediate access to all the supported video apps in your subscription package.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > TV Provider.

2. Choose your TV provider, then sign in with your provider credentials.

If your TV provider isn't listed, sign in directly from the app you want to use.

Subscribe to Apple TV+ on iPhone

In the Apple TV app 📺, you can subscribe to Apple TV+ and watch new, exclusive Apple Originals without ads. Stream Apple TV+ on demand on iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, or download Apple Originals to watch offline on iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac.

You can subscribe to Apple TV+ or to Apple One, which includes Apple TV+ and other services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Apple One and Apple TV+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to Apple TV+

1. Tap Originals, then tap the subscription button.

2. Review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Change or cancel your Apple TV+ subscription

1. Tap Watch Now, then tap 🔵 or your profile picture at the top right.

2. Tap Manage Subscriptions.

Share Apple TV+ with family members

When you subscribe to Apple TV+ or Apple One, you can use Family Sharing to share Apple TV+ with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple TV+ is available to them the first time they open the App Store app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple TV+ or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple TV+ with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave the family group, or (if you're the family group organizer), stop using Family Sharing.

Get shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

The Apple TV app 📺 brings your favorite shows, movies, and sports together in one place. Quickly find and watch your favorites, pick up where you left off with Up Next, or discover something new—personalized just for you.
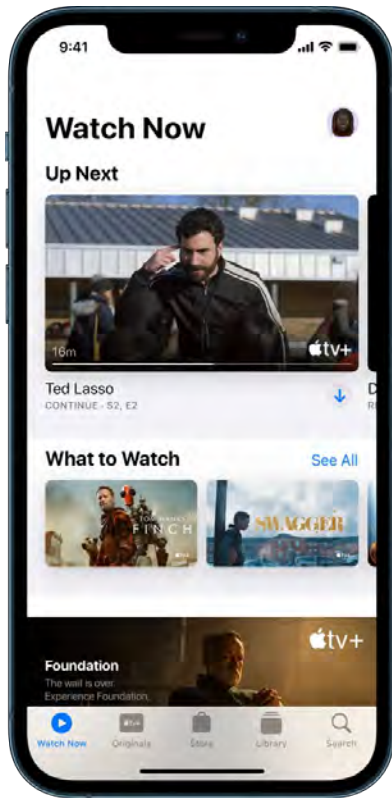
Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Discover shows and movies

In the Apple TV app, tap Watch Now, then do any of the following:

- *Get recommendations:* Browse the What to Watch row for editorial recommendations that are personalized for you. Many rows throughout the app feature personalized recommendations based on your channel subscriptions, supported apps, purchases, and viewing interests.

- *Browse Apple TV+:* In the Apple TV+ row, tap a title to see more information or play a trailer.

- *Browse Apple TV channels:* Scroll down to browse channels you subscribe to. In the Channels row, browse other available channels, then tap a channel to explore its titles.

- *See movies, shows, and episodes sent by friends in Messages:* Scroll down to the Shared with You row. See Use Messages to receive and share content with friends on iPhone.

Search for shows, movies, and more

Tap Search, then enter what you're looking for in the search field. You can search by title, sport, team, cast member, Apple TV channel, or topic (such as "car chase").

Stream or download content

Content from Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels play in the Apple TV app, while content from other providers plays in their video app.

1. Tap an item to see its details.

2. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):

   - *Watch Apple TV+ or Apple TV channels:* Tap Play. If you're not a current subscriber, tap Try It Free (available for eligible Apple ID accounts) or Subscribe.

   - *Choose a different video app:* If the title is available from multiple apps, scroll down to How To Watch, then choose an app.

   - *Download:* Tap ⬇. You can find the downloaded item in your library and watch it even when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

Buy, rent, or pre-order items

1. Tap Store, then tap TV Shows or Movies.

2. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):

   - *Buy:* Purchased items are added to your library.

   - *Rent:* When you rent a movie, you have 30 days to start watching it. After you start watching the movie, you can play it as many times as you want for 48 hours, after which the rental period ends. When the rental period ends, the movie is deleted.

   - *Pre-order:* When the pre-ordered item becomes available, your payment method is billed, and you receive an email notification. If you turned on automatic downloads, the item is automatically downloaded to your iPhone.

3. Confirm your selection, then complete the payment or pre-order, as applicable.

You can find your purchases and rentals in your library and play them in the Apple TV app.

Use the Up Next queue

In the Up Next row, you can find titles you recently added, rented, or purchased, catch the next episode in a series you've been watching, or resume what you're watching from the moment you left off.

Do any of the following:

- *Add an item to Up Next:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Add to Up Next.

- *Remove an item from Up Next:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Remove from Up Next.

- *Continue watching on another device:* You can see your Up Next queue in the Apple TV app on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, or supported smart TV where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

In the Apple TV app 📺, the Sports screen gives you access to a wide array of live and scheduled sports events (U.S. and Canada only).

You can see games in progress with up-to-the-minute scores, or browse upcoming games and add them to Up Next. You can also receive notifications about upcoming events and see live scores for your favorite teams.

Explore sports

1. Tap Watch Now, then scroll down to the Sports row.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Browse current and upcoming games.

   - Tap Explore All Sports. Scroll down to browse football, baseball, basketball, and more. To filter by sport, scroll down to the Browse row, then tap a sport.

Watch a live game

Tap the game, then tap Live Now. Or scroll down to How to Watch, then choose an app.

Select games may show the current score and play-by-play updates on the game page.

To hide the scores of live games, go to Settings 📷 > TV, then turn off Show Sports Scores.

Choose your favorite teams

Add your favorite teams to see their games in Up Next and receive notifications when they're playing.

1. Tap Watch Now, scroll down to the Sports row, then tap Explore All Sports.

2. Scroll to the bottom, then tap Pick Your Favorite Teams.

Control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone

In the Apple TV app , you can use the playback controls to play, pause, skip backward or forward, and more. When you watch with your friends using SharePlay (iOS 15.1 or later), the playback controls are shared by everyone on the FaceTime call.

Use the playback controls

During playback, tap the screen to show the controls.

Control	Description
▶	Play
⏸	Pause
↺15	Skip backward 15 seconds; touch and hold to rewind
↻15	Skip forward 15 seconds; touch and hold to fast-forward
	Stream the video to other devices
•••	Change the playback speed, display subtitles and closed captions, change the language, and more (features subject to availability)
	Start Picture in Picture—you can continue to watch the video while you use another app
	Change the aspect ratio to fit the screen
	Change the aspect ratio to widescreen
✕	Stop playback

Watch together using SharePlay in the Apple TV app on iPhone

In the Apple TV app ![tv] with iOS 15.1 or later, you can stream TV shows and movies in sync with friends and family while on a FaceTime call together. The controls are shared so anyone on the call can pause, rewind, or fast forward. With smart volume, media audio is adjusted automatically, so you can continue to chat while watching. (Settings like subtitles and volume are controlled separately by each person.)
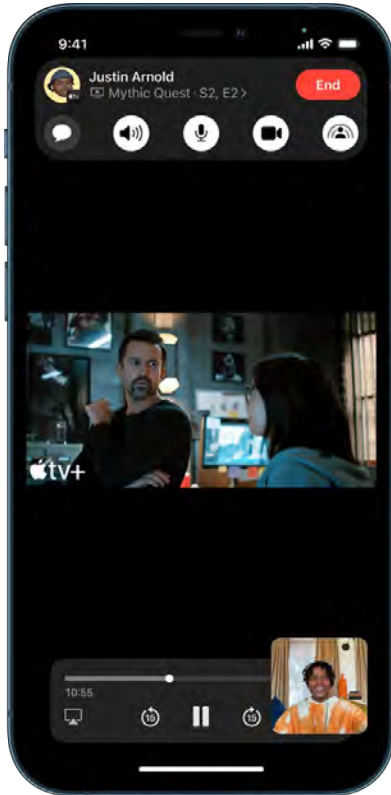
Note: Some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a purchased movie or TV show together, all SharePlay participants must have purchased the item. SharePlay may not support the sharing of some movies or TV shows across different countries or regions. FaceTime, some FaceTime features, and other Apple services may not be available in all countries or regions.

Start SharePlay during a FaceTime call

1. While you're on a FaceTime call, open the Apple TV app.

2. Select a show or movie you want to share.

3. Tap the Play button, then select Play for Everyone (if it appears) to begin watching with everyone on the call. Others on the call may need to tap Join SharePlay.

Start SharePlay in the Apple TV app (iOS 15.4 and later)

1. Select a show or movie you want to share, then tap the item to see its details.

2. Tap ⬆, then tap SharePlay.

3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap FaceTime.

4. After the FaceTime call connects, tap Start or Play to begin SharePlay. Others on the call may need to tap Join SharePlay.

For everyone on the call who has access, the video starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access are asked to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV

After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV to enjoy on the big screen. Tap 🖥, then choose Apple TV as the playback destination.

The video plays in sync on Apple TV, and you can keep the conversation going on your iPhone.

See Watch together using SharePlay in the Apple TV User Guide.

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

In the Apple TV app 📺, your library contains shows and movies you purchased, rented, and downloaded. If you use Family Sharing, you can also view purchases made by family members.

Browse your library

Tap Library, then tap TV Shows, Movies, or Genres.

Watch a movie you rented

1. Tap Library, tap Rentals, then tap a movie.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Play:* Tap ▶. The time remaining in the rental period is shown.

   - *Download:* Tap ⬇ to watch the item later when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

Share purchases made by family members

If you use Family Sharing, you and your family members can share purchases in the Apple TV app.

Tap Library, tap Family Sharing, then choose a family member.

Remove a downloaded item

1. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.

2. Swipe left on the item you want to remove, then tap Delete.

Removing an item from iPhone doesn't delete it from your purchases in iCloud. You can download the item to iPhone again later.

Change the Apple TV app settings on iPhone

You can adjust streaming and download settings for the Apple TV app ⬛. You can also change how the Apple TV app uses your viewing history to provide personalized recommendations.

Change streaming and download options

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > TV.

2. Choose streaming options:

    - *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit streaming to Wi-Fi connections.

    - *Cellular:* Choose High Quality or Automatic.

    - *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Data Saver.

      High Quality requires a faster internet connection and uses more data.

3. Choose download options:

    - *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit downloads to Wi-Fi connections.

    - *Cellular:* Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.

    - *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.

      High Quality results in slower downloads and uses more data.

    - *Languages:* Choose a language. Each added audio language increases the download size. To remove a language, swipe left on the language you want to remove, then tap Delete.

      The default language is the primary language for your country or region. If you turned on Audio Descriptions in Settings > Accessibility, audio descriptions are also downloaded.

Use or clear your viewing history

By default, what you watch on your iPhone affects your personalized recommendations and Up Next queue on all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

You can do any of the following:

- *Clear your viewing history:* Tap Watch Now, tap ⊙ or your profile picture at the top right, then tap Clear Play History.

- *Turn off personalization features based on your viewing history:* Go to Settings ⚙ > TV, then turn off Use Play History.

Voice Memos

Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

With the Voice Memos app ▣ (located in the Utilities folder), you can use iPhone as a portable recording device to record personal notes, classroom lectures, musical ideas, and more. You can fine-tune your recordings with editing tools like trim, replace, and resume.

Note: To make the Voice Memos app easier to find and open, you can Move an app from a folder to the Home Screen.

Record voice memos using the built-in microphone, a supported headset, or an external microphone.

When Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences, your recordings appear and update automatically on all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.
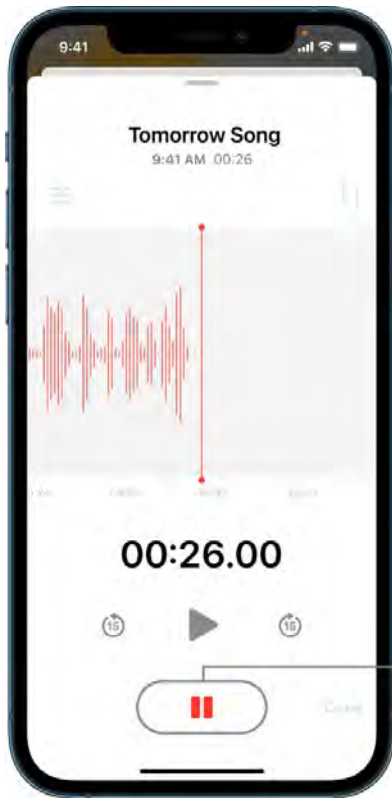
Tap to pause recording.

Make a basic recording

1. To begin recording, tap ⏺.

   To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther from what you're recording.

2. Tap ⏹ to finish recording.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Location Services is turned on in Settings ⚙ > Privacy. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see Edit a recording in Voice Memos.

Note: For your privacy, when you use Voice Memos to make recordings, an orange dot appears at the top of your screen to indicate your microphone is in use.

Use the advanced recording features

You can make a recording in parts, pausing and resuming as you record.

1. To begin recording, tap 🔴.

   To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther away from what you're recording.

   To see more details while you're recording, swipe up from the top of the waveform.

2. Tap ⏸ to stop recording; tap Resume to continue.

3. To review your recording, tap ▶.

   To change where playback begins, drag the waveform left or right across the playhead before you tap ▶.

4. To save the recording, tap Done.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Turn on Location Services is turned on in Settings ⚙ > Privacy. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos.

Mute the start and stop tones

While recording, use the iPhone volume down button to turn the volume all the way down.

Use another app while recording

While you're recording, you can use another app, as long as it doesn't play audio on your device. If the app starts playing audio, Voice Memos stops recording.

1. While recording in Voice Memos, you can go to the Home Screen and open another app.

2. To return to Voice Memos, tap the little orange icon at the top of the screen.

If Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences, your recording is saved in iCloud and appears automatically on all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Recordings using the built-in microphone are mono, but you can record stereo using an external stereo microphone that works with iPhone. Look for accessories marked with the Apple "Made for iPhone" or "Works with iPhone" logo.

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app 🎙, tap a recording and use the playback controls to listen to it.
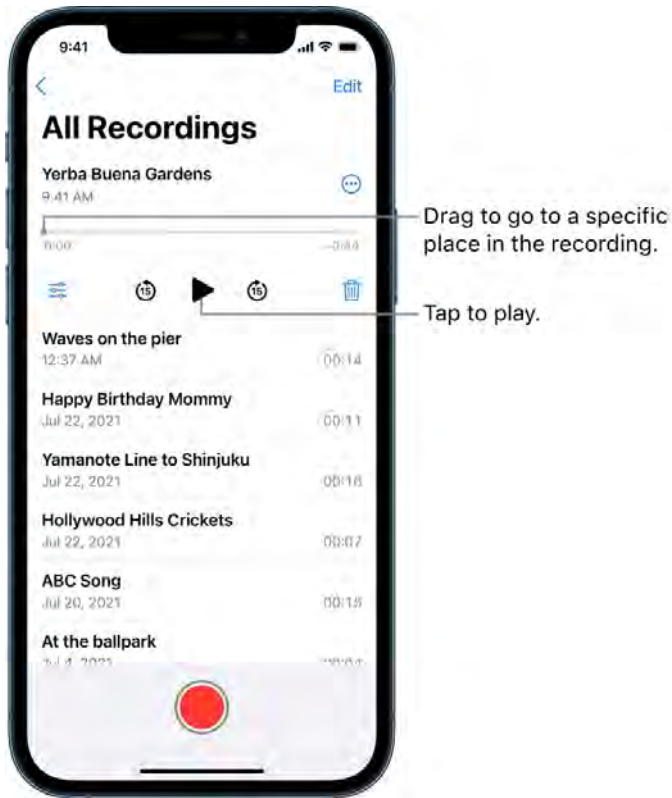
Control	Description
▶	Play
❚❚	Pause
⟲15	Skip backward 15 seconds
15⟳	Skip forward 15 seconds

💡 **Tip:** While the recording is open, you can tap its name to rename it.

Change the playback speed

You can play a recording at a faster or slower speed.

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to play.

2. Tap ≋, then drag the slider toward the tortoise 🐢 for a slower speed, or toward the rabbit 🐇 for a faster speed.

3. Tap ⊗, then tap ▶ to play the recording.

Note: Changing the playback speed doesn't change the recording itself, only how fast it plays.

Enhance a recording

When playing a recording, you can enhance it to reduce background noise and echo.

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to enhance.

2. Tap ≋, then turn on Enhance Recording.

3. Tap ⊗, then tap ▶ to play the recording.

Note: Turning on Enhance Recording doesn't change the recording itself, only how it sounds when you play it.

Skip over gaps when playing back a recording

Voice Memos can analyze your audio and automatically skip over gaps when playing it.

1. Tap the recording you want to play.

2. Tap ≋, then turn on Skip Silence.

3. Tap ⊗, then tap ▶ to play the recording.

Note: Turning on Skip Silence doesn't change the recording itself, only how it sounds when you play it.

Turn off the playback options

To return all the playback options to their original settings, tap ▤, then tap Reset.

Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app 🎙, you can use the editing tools to fine-tune your recordings. You can remove parts you don't want, record over parts, or replace an entire recording. You can also delete a recording you no longer need.

Trim the excess

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to edit, tap ⋯, then tap Edit Recording.

2. Tap ⊔ at the top right, then drag the yellow trim handles to enclose the section you want to keep or delete.

   You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise editing.

Drag the yellow trim handles on the waveform to select a section of the recording.

   To check your selection, tap ▶.

3. To keep the selection (and delete the rest of the recording), tap Trim, or to delete the selection, tap Delete.

4. Tap Save, then tap Done.

Replace a recording

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to replace, tap ⊙, then tap Edit Recording.

2. Drag the waveform to position the playhead where you want to start recording new audio.

   You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise placement.

3. Tap Replace to begin recording (the waveform turns red as you record).

   Tap ❚❚ to pause; tap Resume to continue.

4. To check your recording, tap ▶.

5. Tap Done to save the changes.

Delete a recording

Do one of the following:

- In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to delete, then tap 🗑️.

- Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, then tap Delete.

Deleted recordings move to the Recently Deleted folder, where they're kept for 30 days by default. To change how long deleted recordings are kept, go to Settings 🔘 > Voice Memos > Clear Deleted, then select an option.

Recover or erase a deleted recording

1. Tap the Recently Deleted folder, then tap the recording you want to recover or erase.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Recover the selected recording:* Tap Recover.

   - *Recover everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Recover All.

   - *Delete everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Delete All.

Keep recordings up to date in Voice Memos on iPhone

With the Voice Memos app 🔴 and iCloud, your audio recordings appear and are kept up to date automatically on all your devices (where you're signed in with the same Apple ID and Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences).

Go to Settings 🔘 > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Voice Memos.

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app 🔴, you can mark recordings as favorites and organize your recordings into folders.

Note: Apple Watch recordings, recently deleted recordings, and favorites are grouped into Smart Folders—folders that automatically gather files by type and subject matter.

Mark recordings as favorites

Do one of the following:

- In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to mark as a favorite, tap 🔵, then tap 🤍.

- Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, tap Move, then tap favorites.

Recordings marked as favorites automatically appear in the Favorites folder.

Organize recordings into folders

You can group related recordings together into folders so you can locate them easily.

1. Tap Edit above the list of recordings.

2. Select one or more recordings, then tap Move.

3. If you want to create a new folder for the recordings, tap 📁, then type a name for the folder.

4. Tap the folder where you want to store the selected recordings.

To view your folders, tap ‹; tap a folder to check its contents.

To return to the list of recordings, tap All Recordings above the folders.

Delete or reorder folders

1. Tap ‹ to go to the list of folders.

2. Tap Edit above the folders, then do any of the following:

   - *Delete a folder:* Tap 🔴 next to the folder, then tap 🗑.

   - *Change the order of the folders:* Drag ≡ next to any folder.

3. Tap Done.

Search for or rename a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can search for your recordings in the Voice Memos app 🎙, and rename any recording.

Search for a recording

1. In the Voice Memos list, swipe down to reveal the search field.

2. Tap the search field, enter part or all of the recording name, then tap Search.

Rename a recording

A recording is initially saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Location Services is turned on in Settings 🎛 > Privacy.

To change the name, tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new one.

Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app 🔴, you can share one or more recordings with others (or send it to your Mac or another device) using AirDrop, Mail, Messages, and more.

Share a recording

1. In your Voice Memos list, tap a saved recording, then tap 🔵.

2. Tap Share, choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or 🔼.

Share more than one recording

1. Tap Edit above the list of recordings, then select the recordings you want to share.

2. Tap 📤, choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or 🔼.

Duplicate a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app 🔴, you can duplicate a recording, which is useful when you need another version of it. You can make changes to the copy, save it, and give it a new name.

In the Voice Memos list, tap a recording, tap 🔵, then tap Duplicate.

The copy appears right below the original version in the list and has "copy" added to its name. To change the name, tap it, then type a new one.

Wallet

Keep cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

Use the Wallet app 🟦 to keep your cards and passes in one place for easy access. Wallet can store the following and more:

- Cards for Apple Pay, such as Apple Card and Apple Cash; see Set up Apple Pay

- Transit cards; see Pay for transit

- Digital keys; see Unlock your home, car, and hotel room

- Driver's license or state ID; see Use your driver's license or state ID

- Student ID cards; see Use student ID cards

- Rewards cards, boarding passes, and event tickets; see Add and manage passes

- Vaccination records; see Use vaccination cards
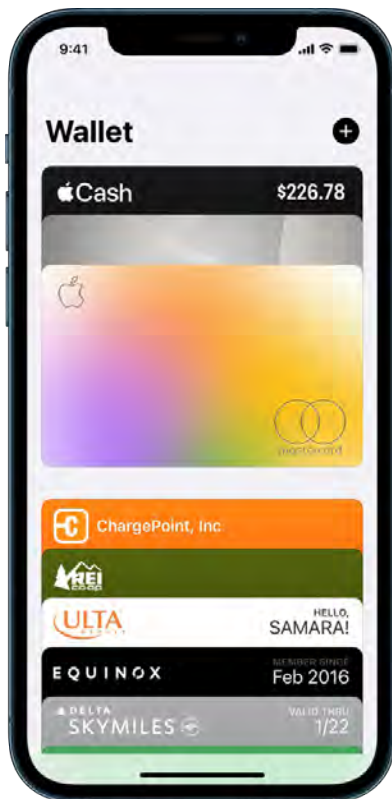
(Apple Card and Apple Cash are available only in the U.S.)

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Using Apple Pay can be simpler than using a physical card, and safer too. With your cards stored in the Wallet app 📇, you can use Apple Pay to make secure payments in stores, for transit, in apps, and on websites that support Apple Pay. In Messages, use Apple Pay to send and receive money from friends and family and to make purchases from participating businesses.

To set up Apple Pay, add your debit, credit, and prepaid cards to Wallet.
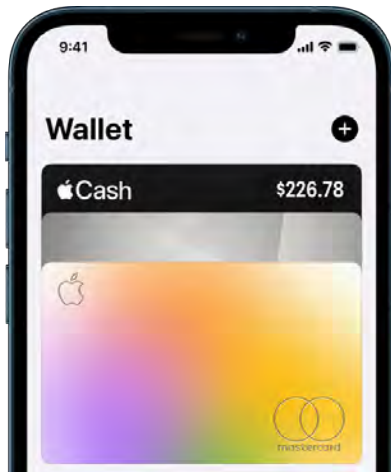
(Apple Card and Apple Cash are available only in the U.S.)

Add a credit or debit card

1. In Wallet, tap ⊕. You may be asked to sign in with your Apple ID.

2. Choose one of the following:

   - *Previous cards:* Choose the card associated with your Apple ID, cards you use with Apple Pay on your other devices, or cards that you removed. Tap Continue, then enter the CVV number of each card.

   - *Debit or credit card:* Position iPhone so that your card appears in the frame, or enter the card details manually.

Alternatively, you may be able to add your card from the app of the bank or card issuer.

The card issuer determines whether your card is eligible for Apple Pay, and may ask you for additional information to complete the verification process.

Set the default card and rearrange your cards

The first card you add to Wallet becomes your default card for payments. To set a different card as the default, move it to the front of the stack.

1. In Wallet, choose your default card.

2. Touch and hold the card, then drag it to the front of the stack.

3. To reposition another card, touch and hold it, then drag it to a new location.

Note: The availability of Apple Pay and its features varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Countries and regions that support Apple Pay.

Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

With your Apple Cash, credit, and debit cards stored in the Wallet app 🗂 on iPhone, you can use Apple Pay for secure, contactless payments in stores, restaurants, and more.

Find places that accept Apple Pay

You can use Apple Pay wherever you see one of these symbols:

In Japan, contactless readers may also display the following symbols:

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like:

- "Show me coffee shops that take Apple Pay"

- "Gas stations that accept Apple Pay"

Learn how to ask Siri

Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Face ID

1. Double-click the side button.

2. When your default card appears, glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.

3. Position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.

Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Touch ID

1. Rest your finger on Touch ID.

2. Position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.

Pay with a different card instead of your default card

1. When your default card appears, tap it, then choose another card.

2. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

3. Position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.

Use a rewards card

At participating stores, you can receive or redeem rewards when you use Apple Pay.

1. Add your rewards card to Wallet.

2. At the payment terminal in the store, present your rewards card by holding iPhone near the contactless reader.

   Apple Pay then switches to your default payment card to pay for the purchase. In some stores, you can apply your rewards card and payment card in one step. In other stores, you need to wait until the terminal or cashier asks for payment.

To have your rewards card appear automatically when you're in the store, tap ⊙ on the card, then turn on Automatic Selection.

Use Apple Pay at stores in Japan

You need an iPhone model that supports Apple Pay in Japan and a card issued by a bank in Japan.

1. Tell the cashier what type of card you're using, as shown on the front of your card in Wallet.

2. Complete the payment.

Note: If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your iPhone at the time you make a payment may be sent to Apple and the card issuer to help prevent fraud. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

Use Apple Pay in apps, App Clips, and Safari on iPhone

You can make purchases using Apple Pay in apps, in App Clips, and on the web using Safari wherever you see the Apple Pay button.

Pay in an app, in an App Clip, or on the web

1. During checkout, tap the Apple Pay button.

2. Review the payment information.

   You can change the credit card, billing and shipping addresses, and contact information.

3. Complete the payment:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Double-click the side button, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.

   - *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Authenticate with Touch ID or enter your passcode.

Shop in Safari on your Mac and pay on iPhone

Before you begin, do the following:

- Sign in with your Apple ID on both devices.

- Turn on Bluetooth on both devices.

- Ensure that iPhone is nearby and connected to a cellular or Wi-Fi network.

When you're ready to checkout, do the following:

1. On your Mac, begin checkout with the Apple Pay payment option.

2. Review the payment information.

   You can change the credit card, shipping address, and contact information.

3. On your iPhone, review the payment summary and complete the payment.

If you don't want to use Apple Pay on your iPhone to make payments on your Mac, go to Settings 🔧 > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn off Allow Payments on Mac.

Change your default shipping and contact information

1. Go to Settings 🔧 > Wallet & Apple Pay.

2. Set any of the following:

   - Shipping address

   - Email

   - Phone

Set up and use Apple Cash on iPhone (U.S. only)

When you receive money in Messages, it's added to your Apple Cash card in the Wallet app 🪪. You can use Apple Cash right away wherever you would use Apple Pay. You can also transfer your Apple Cash balance to your bank account.
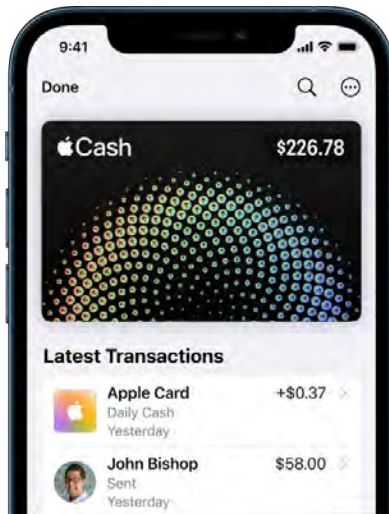
Set up Apple Cash

Do any of the following:

- Go to Settings ⚙️ > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn on Apple Cash.

- In Messages, send or accept a payment. See Send and receive money with Apple Pay (U.S. only).

Use Apple Cash

You can use Apple Cash wherever you use Apple Pay:

- Send and receive money with Apple Pay (U.S. only)

- Use Apple Pay for contactless payments

- Use Apple Pay in apps, App Clips, and Safari

Manage your Apple Cash

1. In Wallet, tap the Apple Cash card.

2. View your latest transactions, or scroll down to see all your transactions grouped by year.

3. Tap ⊙, then do any of the following:

- Add money from a debit card in Wallet.

- Transfer money to your bank. See the Apple Support article Transfer money in Apple Cash to your bank account or Visa debit card.

- Update your bank account information.

- Request a statement.

- Choose to manually or automatically accept all payments. You have 7 days to manually accept a payment before it's returned to the sender.

- View your suggested PIN. Apple Cash doesn't require a PIN because every payment is authenticated by Face ID, Touch ID, or a secure passcode. However, some terminals may still require you to enter a four-digit code to complete the transaction.

- Verify your identity for account servicing and to increase your transaction limits.

- Contact Apple Support.

Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

Set up and use Apple Card on iPhone (U.S. only)

Apple Card is a credit card created by Apple and designed to help you lead a healthier financial life. You can sign up for Apple Card in the Wallet app 🔲 on iPhone in minutes and start using it with Apple Pay right away in stores, in apps, or online worldwide. Apple Card gives you easy-to-understand, real-time views of your latest transactions and balance right in Wallet, and Apple Card support is available anytime by simply sending a text from Messages.
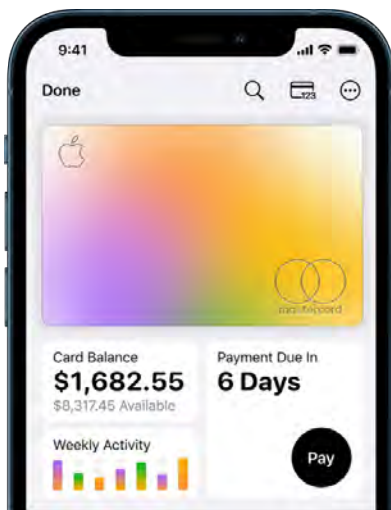
Get Apple Card

1. In Wallet, tap ⊕, then tap Apply for Apple Card.

2. Enter your information, then agree to the terms and conditions to submit your application.

3. Review the details of your Apple Card offer, including the credit limit and APR, then accept or decline the offer.

4. If you accept the terms, you can do any of the following:

   - Set Apple Card as your default card for Apple Pay transactions.

   - Get a physical Apple Card to use where Apple Pay isn't accepted.

Use Apple Card

You can use Apple Card wherever you use Apple Pay:

- Make contactless payments using Apple Pay

- Pay in apps or on the web using Apple Pay

You can also use Apple Card at locations where Apple Pay isn't accepted:

- *In apps, on the web, or over the phone:* Tap ▭ to see the card number, expiration date, and security code. Use this information to make your purchase.

- *In stores, restaurants, and other locations:* Use the physical card.

View transactions and statements

1. In Wallet, tap Apple Card.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Review your transactions:* View your latest transactions, or scroll down to see all your transactions grouped by month and year.

- *Search your transactions:* Tap 🔍, enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard. You can also choose a suggested search, such as a category, merchant, or location, then enter additional text to refine your search.

- *See weekly, monthly, or yearly activity:* Tap Activity (below Card Balance) to see your spending grouped in categories such as Shopping, Food & Drinks, and Services. Tap Week, Month, or Year to see a different view. Swipe right to see previous periods.

- *Get monthly statements:* Tap Card Balance to see the balance, new spending, and payments and credits. Scroll down to see your monthly statements. Tap a statement to see the summary for that month, download a PDF statement, or export transactions to a CSV, OFX, QFX, or QBO file.

Make payments

Tap the Payment button. Or tap 😶, then choose any of the following:

- *Scheduled Payments:* Choose Pay My Bill or Pay Different Amount, enter the payment details (such as the account and date), then authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

- *Make a Payment:* Drag the checkmark to adjust the payment amount or tap Show Keypad to enter an amount, tap Pay Now or Pay Later, review the payment details (such as the payment account), then authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

Use the Apple Card widget on your Home screen (iOS 15.4 and later)

See your Apple Card balance, available credit, and spending activity at a glance.

1. Add the Apple Card widget to your Home screen.

2. To see your spending activity for a different time period, touch and hold the widget, tap Edit Widget, then choose Weekly, Monthly, or Yearly.

3. To go to Apple Card in Wallet, tap the widget.

View Apple Card details, change settings, contact support, and more

Tap 😶, then do any of the following:

- Share your Apple Card with family members, set transaction limits, and more.

- Manage Apple Card Monthly Installments.

- Review scheduled payments.

- View credit details.

- Add or remove linked bank accounts.

- Lock or unlock your physical card and request a replacement.

- Edit Express Transit settings.

- Change notification settings.

- Update your billing address.

- Get support through Messages, by phone, or on the [Apple Card Support website](#).

Manage Apple Pay cards and activity on iPhone

In Wallet 🟧, you can manage the cards you use for Apple Pay and review your recent transactions.

View the information for a card and change its settings

1. In Wallet, tap the card.

   Note: The last transaction may appear, showing an authorized amount that may differ from the amount of the payment charged to your account. For example, a gas station may request an authorization of $99, even though you pumped only $25 worth of gasoline. To see the final charges, see the statement from your card issuer, which includes all Apple Pay transactions.

2. Tap ⊙, then do any of the following:

   - Tap Transactions to view your recent history. To hide this information, turn off Transaction History. To view all your Apple Pay activity, see the statement from your card issuer.

   - View the last four digits of the card number and Device Account Number—the number transmitted to the merchant.

   - Change the billing address.

   - Remove the card from Wallet.

Change your Apple Pay settings

1. Go to Settings 🟤 > Wallet & Apple Pay.

2. Choose options such as the following:

- *Double-Click Side Button:* (on an iPhone with Face ID) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the side button.

- *Double-Click Home Button:* (on an iPhone with a Home button) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the Home button.

- *Allow Payments on Mac:* Allows iPhone to confirm payments on your nearby Mac.

Remove your cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen

If you turned on Find My iPhone, you can use it to help locate and secure your iPhone.

To remove your cards from Apple Pay, do any of the following:

- *On a Mac or PC:* Sign in to your Apple ID account. In the Devices section, click the lost iPhone. Below the list of cards, click Remove all.

- *On another iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch:* Go to Settings 🎚 > [*your name*], tap the lost iPhone, then tap Remove All Cards (below Apple Pay).

- Call the issuers of your cards.

If you remove cards, you can add them again later.

Note: If you sign out of iCloud in Settings > [*your name*], all your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay are removed from iPhone. You can add the cards again the next time you sign in with your Apple ID.

Pay for transit using iPhone

With your transit cards stored in the Wallet app 🪪, you can use your iPhone to pay for your fare (available for participating transit systems in certain countries and regions).

Add a transit card

1. In Wallet, tap ➕, then tap Transit Card.

2. Enter a location or card name, or scroll down to browse transit cards in your area.

Pay for transit at a fare gate

If you're not using Express Transit, do the following:

1. Make sure your device is turned on (it doesn't need to be connected to a network).

2. As you approach a fare gate or board a bus, do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Double-click the side button, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.

   - *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* With the Lock Screen showing on your device, double-click the Home button, then rest your finger on Touch ID.

3. Position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader at the transit gate until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.

See the Apple Support article Where you can ride transit with Apple Pay.

Pay for your ride with Express Transit

With Express Transit (available in certain countries or regions), you don't need to authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode, and you don't need to wake or unlock your device or open an app.

1. Set up Express Transit; see the Apple Support articles Using Suica or PASMO on iPhone or Apple Watch in Japan and Use Express Transit with Apple Pay in China mainland.

2. As you approach a fare gate or board the bus, make sure your device is turned on (it doesn't need to be connected to a network).

3. Position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader at the transit gate until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.

On models that support Express Cards with power reserve, your Express Cards may be available for up to five hours when your iPhone needs to be charged. To check if Express Cards are available when iPhone needs to be charged, press the side button (doing this often may significantly reduce the power reserve for Express Cards). If you turn off your iPhone, this feature isn't available.

Unlock your car, home, and hotel room with keys in Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app 🪪 on iPhone XR, iPhone XS, and later, you can store keys to your car, home, and hotel room. iPhone automatically presents the right key when you arrive at your door, allowing you to enter with just a tap using Near Field Communication (NFC). With power reserve mode, your keys work even if the iPhone battery runs low.

Unlock and start your car

With a compatible car and a digital car key in the Wallet app, you can unlock, lock, and start your car without taking iPhone out of your bag or pocket. Ultra Wideband provides precise spatial awareness, so you can't lock your iPhone in your car or start your vehicle when iPhone isn't inside.

See the Apple Support article Use your iPhone or Apple Watch as a car key.

Unlock your home

Some lock makers provide the ability to unlock your door with a home key in Apple Wallet on your compatible iPhone and Apple Watch (Series 4 and later). You add a home key to Apple Wallet with the Home app 🏠 on your iPhone.

When you have a home key on your iPhone or Apple Watch, just place your device near the lock to unlock it. You can use the Home app to share access with other people.

See Unlock your door with a home key on iPhone.

Unlock your hotel room

You can add a hotel key to Wallet from the participating hotel provider's app, use it to check in without going to the lobby, and use your iPhone and Apple Watch to unlock your room. Wallet automatically archives your pass after you check out to keep passes organized as you travel.

See the Apple Support article Add a hotel room key to Apple Wallet on your iPhone.

Use your driver's license or state ID in Wallet on iPhone (U.S. only)

You can easily and securely add your driver's license or state ID card to the Wallet app 💳, then use your iPhone or Apple Watch to present your license or ID at select TSA security checkpoints. (Supported on iPhone 8 and later with iOS 15.3 or later, and on Apple Watch Series 4 and later with watchOS 8.4 or later. The driver's license or state ID must be issued by a participating state.)
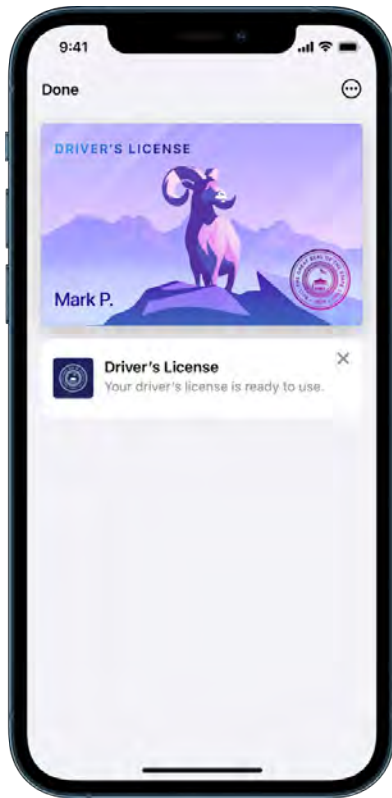
Add your license or ID

1. In Wallet, tap ⊕.

2. Tap Driver's License or State ID, then choose your state.

   If your state isn't listed, it might not participate yet.

3. Choose whether you want to add your license or ID to your iPhone only, or to both your iPhone and paired Apple Watch.

4. Follow the onscreen instructions to scan the front and back of your license or ID.

If you want to add your license or ID to your Apple Watch later, open the Apple Watch app on your iPhone, tap My Watch, then tap Wallet & Apple Pay. Find your license or ID listed under Other Cards on Your iPhone. Tap the Add button next to it, then follow the onscreen instructions. See Use your driver's license or state ID card in Wallet on iPhone and Apple Watch (U.S. only) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Present your license or ID

1. Unlock and position the top of your iPhone near the identity reader.

2. On your iPhone screen, review the information to be shared.
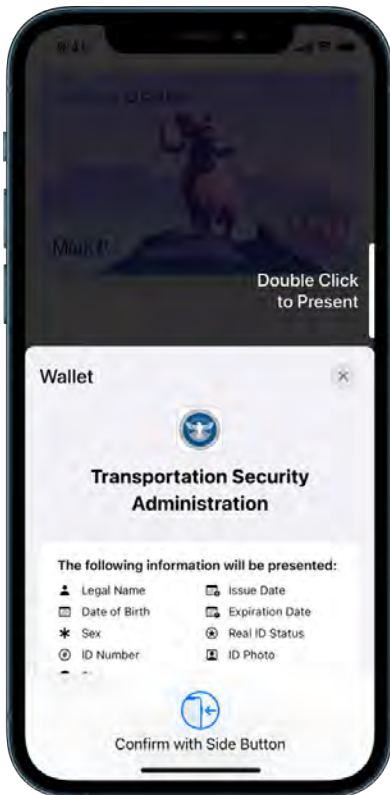
3. To present your license or ID, do the following:

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Double-click the side button, then authenticate with the Face ID that you used to add your license or ID.

- *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Rest your finger on the Home button to authenticate with the Touch ID that you used to add your license or ID.

A checkmark appears when you successfully present your license or ID.

Manage your license or ID

In Wallet, tap your license or ID to see where you have presented it. You can also tap ⊙, then do any of the following:

- View the information on your license or ID (requires authentication with the Face ID or Touch ID that you used to add your license or ID).

- Change the fingerprint you use to present with Touch ID (on supported models).

- Remove your license or ID.

Use student ID cards in Wallet on iPhone

On supported campuses, you can add your contactless student ID card to the Wallet app 🪪, and then use your iPhone to access locations where your student ID card is accepted, such as your dorm, the library, and campus events. You can even pay for laundry, snacks, and meals around campus.

Add your student ID card to Wallet

1. Download the app that supports student ID cards for your school.

2. Open the app, sign in, then add your student ID card to Wallet.

Use your student ID card

To present your student ID card at a reader, position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the reader until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.

Manage your student ID card

Tap the card in Wallet, tap ⊙, then do any of the following:

- View your name and ID number.

- View your account balance.

- Contact the card issuer.

- Turn on Express Mode to use your card without Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode.

  On an iPhone that supports Express Cards with power reserve, your Express Card may be available for up to five hours when your iPhone needs to be charged. To check if Express Cards are available when iPhone needs to be charged, press the side or top button (doing this often may significantly reduce the power reserve for Express Cards). If you turn off your iPhone, this feature isn't available.

See the Apple Support article Use student ID cards in Wallet on your iPhone or Apple Watch.

Add and use passes in Wallet on iPhone

Use the Wallet app 🪪 to keep rewards cards, coupons, boarding passes, movie and event tickets, and more in one place for easy access. Passes can include useful information, such as the balance on your coffee card, a coupon's expiration date, or boarding information for a flight.
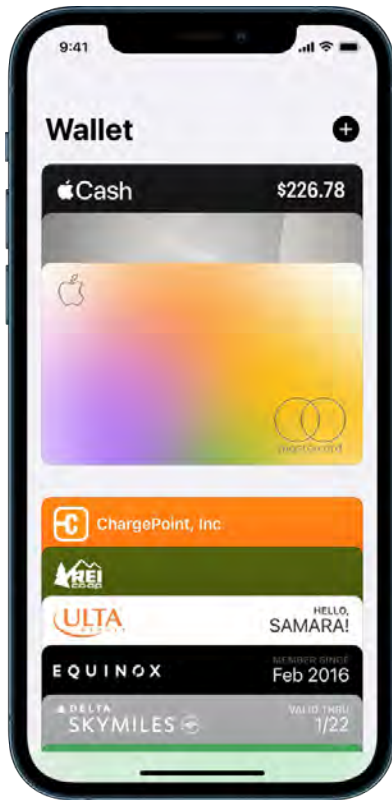
(The Apple Cash card is available only in the U.S.)

Add a pass

You may be asked to add a pass within an app after you perform an action such as purchasing a ticket. Or, you can tap Add to Apple Wallet when you see it from the following:

- Wallet-enabled apps

- Mail or Messages

- Web browser such as Safari

- AirDrop sharing

- Wallet notification after you use Apple Pay at a supported merchant

- QR code or barcode

  To scan the code, open the Camera app 📷, then position iPhone so that the code appears on the screen.

Use a pass with a QR code or barcode

1. If a notification for a pass appears on the Lock Screen, tap the notification; if there's no notification, open the Wallet app 🖼️.

2. Tap the pass, then present the QR code or barcode to the reader.

Use a contactless pass

1. Access the pass in any of the following ways:

   - On the Lock Screen, tap the pass notification. If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

   - If Automatic Selection is turned on for the pass, double-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or double-click the Home button (on other iPhone models). If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

   - Open the Wallet app 🖼️, then tap the pass.

2. To present the pass, position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the reader until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.

Manage your passes in Wallet on iPhone

In the Wallet app 🟥, you can rearrange, archive, or delete passes, view pass information, and change the settings.

Rearrange your passes

1. In the Wallet stack, touch and hold the pass you want to move.

2. Drag the pass to a new place in the stack.

   The pass order is updated on your iPhone, iPod touch, and Apple Watch where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

View the information for a pass and change its settings

1. Tap the pass, then tap ⊙.

2. Choose any of the following (not all options are available on all passes):

   - *Automatic Updates:* Allow the pass to receive updates from the issuer.

   - *Suggest on Lock Screen:* Show the pass based on time or location.

     To allow location access, go to Settings 🔘 > Privacy > Location Services > Wallet, then tap While Using the App.

   - *Automatic Selection:* Select the pass where it's requested.

   - *Share Pass:* Send the pass to a friend using Mail or Messages.

   - *Remove Pass:* Delete the pass from all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

3. Scroll down to view other information such as the associated app, usage details, and terms and conditions.

Change the settings for all your passes

- *Keep your passes up to date on your other devices:* Sign in with your Apple ID on your iPhone, iPod touch, and Apple Watch.

  Note: This setting applies only to passes in Wallet, not to cards you use with Apple Pay.

- *Set notification options:* Go to Settings 🔘 > Notifications > Wallet. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

- *Prevent passes from appearing on the Lock Screen:* Go to Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn off Double-Click Side Button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Double-Click Home Button (on other iPhone models).

Archive or remove passes

- *Automatically archive old passes:* Go to Settings 🔘 > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn on Hide Expired Passes.

  To unhide an expired pass, scroll to the bottom of the Wallet stack, tap View Expired Passes, choose the pass, then tap Unhide.

- *Delete a pass:* In Wallet, tap the pass, tap ⊙, then tap Remove Pass.

Use COVID-19 vaccination cards in Wallet on iPhone

If you add a verifiable COVID-19 vaccination record in the Health app 🫀, you can quickly present the vaccination card in the Wallet app 🎴 (iOS 15.1 and later).

Add a vaccination card to Wallet

Do any of the following:

- Download a verifiable COVID-19 vaccination record from a supported healthcare provider or authority, then tap Add to Wallet & Health.

- If you already have a verifiable COVID-19 vaccination record from a supported healthcare provider or authority in the Health app, tap the record, then tap Add to Wallet.

Note: If you have an Apple Watch paired to your iPhone, the vaccination card is also added to and accessible from your Apple Watch (watchOS 8 and later). See Use vaccination cards in Wallet on Apple Watch in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Present a vaccination card

1. Double-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or double-click the Home button (on other iPhone models).

2. In the Wallet stack, tap the vaccination card. If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

   Note: Your vaccination card may contain sensitive information such as your birthdate. To review the information stored on your card, tap ⊙.

3. Present the QR code to the reader. You may be asked to verify your identity by presenting a photo ID such as your driver's license.

Manage or remove a vaccination card

Tap the vaccination card, tap ⊙, then do any of the following:

- *See the immunization details:* Tap Open to see the information in the Health app ♥.

- *Remove the card:* Tap Remove Pass.

   Note: Removing a vaccination card from Wallet doesn't remove the corresponding vaccination record from the Health app. However, if you have an Apple Watch paired to your iPhone, the vaccination card is removed from your Apple Watch.

Weather

Check the weather on iPhone

Use the Weather app 🔵 to check the weather for your current location or in other places. You can view the upcoming hourly and 10-day forecast, see severe weather information, view weather maps, receive precipitation notifications, and more.

Note: Weather uses Location Services to get the forecast for your current location. To turn on Location Services, go to Settings ⚙️ > Privacy > Location Services > Weather, then choose an option. Turn on Precise Location to increase the accuracy of the forecast in your current location.

🎙️ **Siri:** Say something like: "What's the weather for today?" or "How windy is it out there?" Learn how to ask Siri.

Check the weather forecast and conditions

Open Weather to do any of the following:

- *Check local weather conditions:* The details for your current location are available when you open Weather.

  Note: If you don't see details for your current location when you open Weather, tap ☰, then tap My Location.

  Updates about severe weather conditions such as winter storms and flash floods appear at the top of the screen (not available in all countries or regions). Tap See More to read the full government-issued alert. To learn about the data sources for the Weather app, see the Apple Support article Feature availability and data sources in the Weather app.

- *View the hourly forecast:* Swipe the hourly display left or right.

- *View the 10-day forecast:* View weather conditions, chance of precipitation, and high and low temperatures for the coming days.

- *View air quality details:* View air quality information; tap See More to view details about health information and pollutants (not available in all countries or regions).

  Note: The air quality scale appears above the hourly forecast when air quality reaches a particular level for that location. For some locations, the air quality scale always appears above the hourly forecast.

- *View weather maps in your area:* View a map of temperature, precipitation, or air quality in the area. Tap the map to view it in full screen or to change the map view between temperature, precipitation, and air quality.

- *View more weather details:* Scroll down to view the UV index, sunrise, sunset, wind speed, and more.

- *Check the weather in other locations:* Swipe left or right on the screen, or tap ☰.

Add, delete, and rearrange locations in your weather list

1. Tap ☰ to see your weather list.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a location:* Enter the name of the city, the zip code, or the airport code in the search field, tap the location, then tap Add.

   - *Delete a location:* Swipe left on the location, then tap 🗑. Or, tap ⚫⚫⚫, then tap Edit List.

   - *Rearrange the order of locations on your list:* Touch and hold the location, then move it up or down. Or, tap ⚫⚫⚫, then tap Edit List.

Your list of locations stays up to date across your devices when you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

View full-screen temperature, precipitation, and air quality maps

Open Weather, then tap the weather map or 🗺 to do any of the following:

- Tap ⬙ to change the map display to temperature, precipitation, or air quality.

- Touch the screen and drag your finger to move the map.

- Pinch the screen to zoom in and out.

  While viewing the precipitation map, zoom out to see the 12-hour precipitation forecast; zoom back in to see the next-hour precipitation forecast (not available in all countries or regions).

- Tap ☰ to view a different location in your weather list.

- Tap ◁ to return to your current location.

- Touch and hold a location on the map to add it to your weather list, view its current conditions, or view it in Maps.
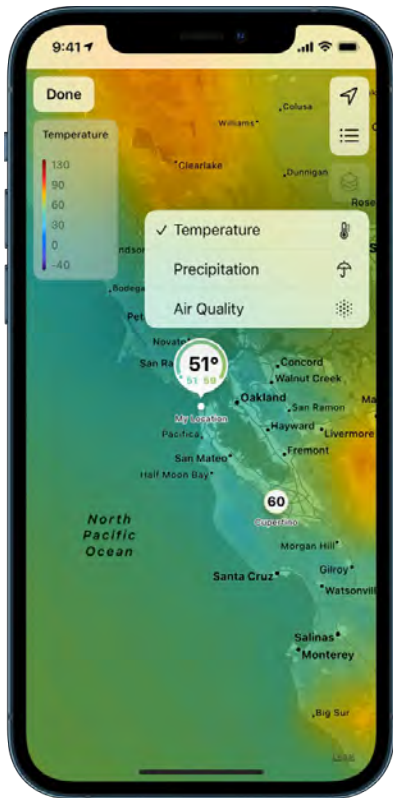
Tap Done to return to weather conditions and forecast.

Turn notifications on or off

You can receive a weather notification when rain, snow, hail, or sleet is about to start or stop in your current location. You can also receive precipitation notifications for locations in your weather list (not available in all countries or regions).

To receive notifications, turn on Location Access in Settings. Go to Settings 🌐 > Privacy > Location Services > Weather, then tap Always. Turn on Precise Location to receive the most accurate notifications for your current location.

To manage notifications by location, do the following:

1. Open Weather, then tap ☰ to view your weather list.

2. Tap ⚫, then tap Notifications.

   If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.

3. Tap on or off for each location (green is on).

4. Tap Done.

Switch between Celsius and Fahrenheit

1. Open Weather, then tap ☰.

2. Tap ⚫, then tap Celsius or Fahrenheit.

Send a report about the weather

You can report the weather in your location if it doesn't match what's shown in the Weather app.

1. Open Weather, then tap ☰.

2. Tap ⚫, then tap Report an Issue.

3. Tap the options that best describe the weather conditions in your location.

4. Tap Submit.

The information you share with Apple isn't associated with your Apple ID.

Add the Weather widget to your iPhone Home Screen

Use the Weather widget to check weather at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen.

Note: The Weather widget is also available on the iPad Home Screen.

Draft

See .

View the weather icons on iPhone

The icons in the Weather app 🌤️ indicate different weather conditions, like fog or haze. Here's a list of some of the weather icons and what they mean.

Icon	Description
	Sunrise
	Sunset
	Clear
	Partly cloudy
	Dust
	Haze
	Smoke
	Fog
	Windy
	Cloudy
	Thunderstorms
	Showers
	Heavy showers

Draft

Icon	Description
	Drizzle
	Hail/Mixed rain
	Tornado
	Snow
	Scattered snow
	Heavy snow/Sleet
	Blowing snow
	Frigid temps
	Cloudy
	Clear

Siri

Ask Siri on iPhone

Talking to Siri is a quick way to get things done. Ask Siri to translate a phrase, set an alarm, find a location, report on the weather, and more. See Find out what Siri can do on iPhone.

On supported devices, voice input is processed on iPhone, but transcripts of your requests are sent to Apple in order to improve Siri. This data is not associated with your Apple ID and will only be stored for a limited time. You can also choose to share your voice recordings with Apple for improvement purposes. To learn more, see the Improve Siri and Dictation & Privacy website.

For some requests, iPhone must be connected to the internet. Cellular charges may apply.
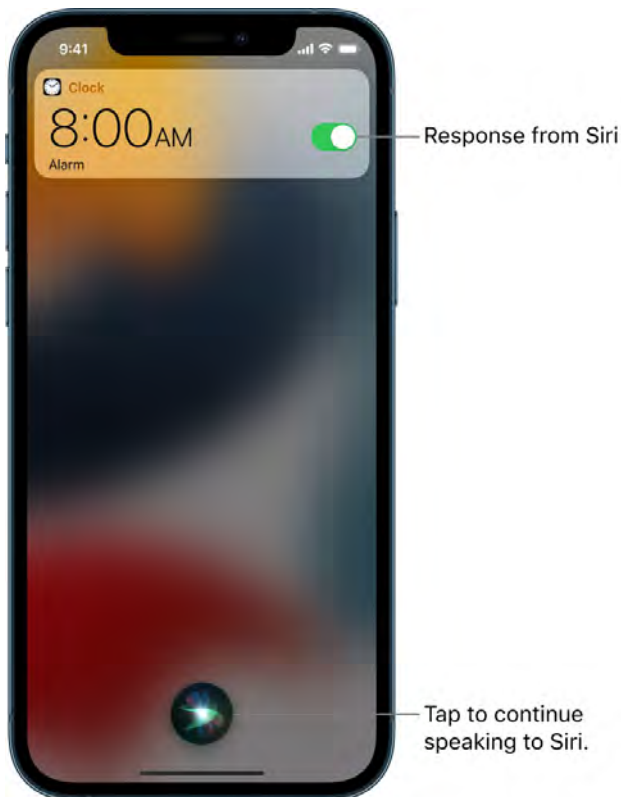
Set up Siri

If you didn't set up Siri when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings 🔘 > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *If you want to activate Siri with your voice:* Turn on Listen for "Hey Siri."

- *If you want to activate Siri with a button:* Turn on Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Press Home for Siri (on an iPhone with a Home button).

To change additional Siri settings, see Change Siri settings on iPhone.

Activate Siri with your voice

When you activate Siri with your voice, Siri responds out loud.

1. Say "Hey Siri," then ask Siri a question or to do a task for you.

    For example, say something like "Hey Siri, what's the weather for today?" or "Hey Siri, set an alarm for 8 a.m."

2. To ask Siri another question or to do another task, say "Hey Siri" again or tap 🟣.

Note: To prevent iPhone from responding to "Hey Siri," place your iPhone face down, or go to Settings ⚙️ > Siri & Search, then turn off Listen for "Hey Siri."

You can also say "Hey Siri" to activate Siri while wearing supported AirPods. See Set up Siri in the AirPods User Guide.

Activate Siri with a button

When you activate Siri with a button, Siri responds silently when iPhone is in silent mode. When silent mode is off, Siri responds out loud. To change this, see Change how Siri responds.

1. Do one of the following:

    - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Press and hold the side button.

    - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the Home button.

    - *EarPods:* Press and hold the center or call button.

    - *CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel, or touch and hold the Home button on the CarPlay Home Screen. (See Use Siri to Control CarPlay.)

    - *Siri Eyes Free:* Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.

2. When Siri appears, ask Siri a question or to do a task for you.

    For example, say something like "What's 18 percent of 225?" or "Set the timer for 3 minutes."

3. To ask Siri another question or to do another task, tap 🟣.

You can also activate Siri with a touch on supported AirPods. See Set up Siri in the AirPods User Guide.

Make a correction if Siri misunderstands you

- *Rephrase your request:* Tap 🌐, then say your request in a different way.

- *Spell out part of your request:* Tap 🌐, then repeat your request by spelling out any words that Siri didn't understand. For example, say "Call," then spell the person's name.

- *Change a message before sending it:* Say "Change it."

- *Edit your request with text:* If you see your request onscreen, you can edit it. Tap the request, then use the onscreen keyboard.

Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to Settings 🌐 > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.

2. To make a request, activate Siri, then use the keyboard and text field to ask Siri a question or to do a task for you.

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article If "Hey Siri" isn't working on your iPhone or iPad.

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website.

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

Use Siri on iPhone to get information and perform tasks. Siri and its response appear on top of what you're currently doing, allowing you to refer to information onscreen.

Siri is interactive. When Siri displays a web link, you can tap it to see more information in your default web browser. When the onscreen response from Siri includes buttons or controls, you can tap them to take further action. And you can tap Siri again to ask another question or do an additional task for you.

Below are some examples of what you can ask Siri to do. Additional examples appear throughout this guide. You can also ask Siri: Say something like "Hey Siri, what can you do?"

Use Siri to answer questions

Use Siri to quickly check facts, do calculations, or translate a phrase into another language. Say something like:

- "Hey Siri, what causes a rainbow?"

- "Hey Siri, what does a cat sound like?"

- "Hey Siri, what's the derivative of cosine x?"

- "Hey Siri, how do you say Thank You in Mandarin?"

Play the translation again.
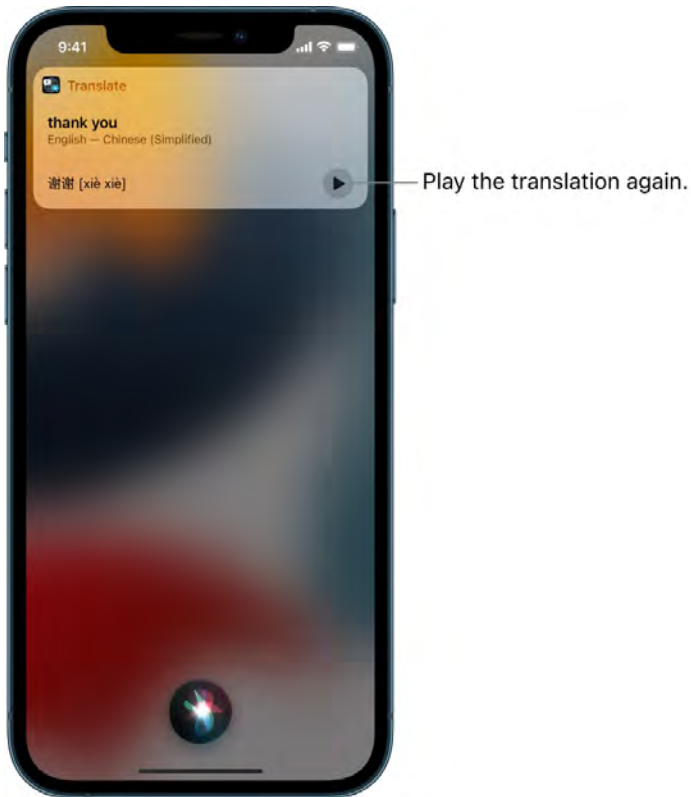
Use Siri with apps

You can use Siri to control apps with your voice. Say something like:

- "Hey Siri, set up a meeting with Gordon at 9" to create an event in Calendar.

- "Hey Siri, add artichokes to my groceries list" to add an item to Reminders.

- "Hey Siri, what's my update?" to get an update about the weather in your area, the news, your reminders and calendar events, and more.

For more examples, see any of the following:

- Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone

- Use Siri to play music on iPhone and Listen to music with Apple Music Voice on iPhone

- Control your home using Siri on iPhone

- Use Siri, Maps, and the Maps widget to get directions on iPhone

- Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Use Siri to share information with contacts

You can share onscreen items like photos, webpages, content from Apple Music or Apple Podcasts, Maps locations, and more with people in your contacts.

For example, when looking at a photo in your Photo library, say something like "Hey Siri, send this to mom" to create a new message with the photo.
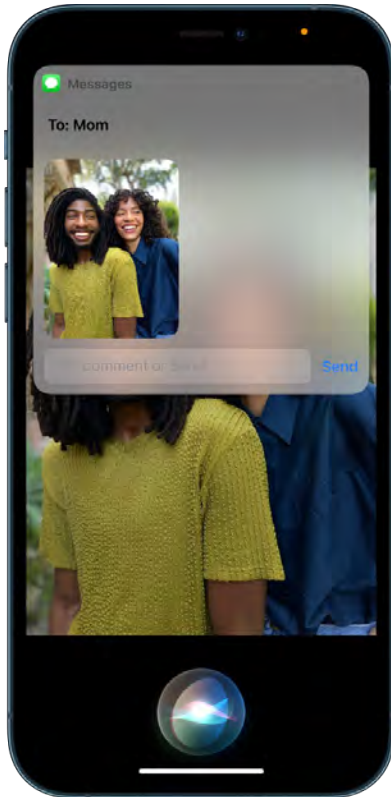
Personalize your experience with Siri

The more you use Siri, the better it knows what you need. You can also tell Siri about yourself and change how and when Siri responds. See any of the following:

- Siri Suggestions on iPhone

- Tell Siri about yourself on iPhone

- Change Siri settings on iPhone

You can also use accessibility features with Siri.

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website.

Tell Siri about yourself on iPhone

You can provide information to Siri—including things like your home and work addresses, and your relationships—for a more personalized experience so you can say things like "Give me driving directions home" and "FaceTime mom."

Tell Siri who you are

1. Open Contacts 👤, then fill out your contact information.

2. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Siri & Search > My Information, then tap your name.

Tell Siri about a relationship

Say something like "Hey Siri, Eliza Block is my wife" or "Hey Siri, Ashley Kamin is my mom."

Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices

On each device, go to Settings ⚙️, then sign in with the same Apple ID.

If you use iCloud, your Siri settings stay up to date across your Apple devices using end-to-end encryption.

If you don't want Siri personalization to stay up to date across iPhone and your other devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn off Siri.

Note: If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your device at the time you make a request is also sent to Apple to help Siri and Dictation improve the accuracy of its response to your requests. To deliver relevant responses, Apple may use the IP address of your internet connection to approximate your location by matching it to a geographic region. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone

Siri can announce calls and notifications from apps like Messages on supported headphones and when using CarPlay. You can answer or reply using your voice without needing to say "Hey Siri."

Announce Calls and Announce Notifications also work with supported third-party apps.

Have Siri announce calls

With Announce Calls, Siri identifies incoming phone calls and FaceTime calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Siri & Search > Announce Calls, then choose an option.

2. When a call comes in, Siri identifies the caller, and asks if you want to answer the call. Say "yes" to accept the call or "no" to decline it.

Have Siri announce notifications

Siri can automatically announce incoming notifications from apps like Messages and Reminders. Siri automatically enables app notifications for apps that use time-sensitive notifications, but you can change the settings at any time. To learn more about time-sensitive notifications, see Set up Focus on iPhone.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Siri & Search > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.

2. Tap an app you want Siri to announce notifications from, then turn on Announce Notifications.

   For some apps, you can also choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

For apps where you can send a reply, like Messages, Siri repeats what you said, then asks for confirmation before sending your reply. To send replies without waiting for confirmation, turn on Reply Without Confirmation.

Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Some apps offer shortcuts for things you do frequently. You can use Siri to initiate these shortcuts with just your voice. For example, a travel app might let you view your upcoming trip event just by asking Siri "Where am I going next?"

Add a suggested shortcut

Tap Add to Siri when you see a suggestion for a shortcut, then follow the onscreen instructions to record a phrase of your choice that performs the shortcut.

You can also use the Shortcuts app to create a new shortcut that uses Siri, or to manage, re-record, and delete existing Siri shortcuts. See the Shortcuts User Guide.

Use a shortcut

Activate Siri, then speak your phrase for the shortcut. See Ask Siri on iPhone.

Based on your routines and how you use your apps, Siri also suggests shortcuts on the Home Screen, the Lock Screen, and when you start a search. To turn off shortcut suggestions for an app, see Change Siri settings for a specific app.

Siri Suggestions on iPhone

Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as call into a meeting or confirm an appointment, based on your routines and how you use your apps.

For example, Siri might help when you do any of the following:

- *Glance at the Lock Screen or start a search:* As Siri learns your routines, you get suggestions for just what you need, at just the right time.

- *Create email and events:* When you start adding people to an email or calendar event, Siri suggests the people you included in previous emails or events.

- *Receive calls:* If you get an incoming call from an unknown number, Siri lets you know who might be calling—based on phone numbers included in your emails.

- *Leave for an event:* If your calendar event includes a location, Siri assesses traffic conditions and notifies you when to leave.

- *Type:* As you enter text, Siri can suggest names of movies, places—anything you viewed on iPhone recently. If you tell a friend you're on your way, Siri can even suggest your estimated arrival time.

- *Search in Safari:* Siri suggests websites and other information in the search field as you type.

  Above the keyboard, Siri also suggests words and phrases based on what you were just reading.

- *Confirm an appointment or book a flight on a travel website:* Siri asks if you want to add it to your calendar.

- *Read News stories:* As Siri learns which topics you're interested in, they'll be suggested in News.

To change the settings for Siri Suggestions, see Change Siri settings on iPhone.

Your personal information—which is encrypted and remains private—stays up to date across all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID. As Siri learns about you on one device, your experience with Siri is improved on your other devices. If you don't want Siri personalization to update across your devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. See Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices.

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the Siri Suggestions, Search & Privacy website.

Use Siri in your car

With CarPlay or Siri Eyes Free, you can keep focused on the road by using Siri to make calls, send text messages, play music that's on your iPhone, get directions, and use other iPhone features.

CarPlay (available in select cars) takes the things you want to do with your iPhone while driving and puts them on your car's built-in display. CarPlay uses Siri, so you can control CarPlay with just your voice. See Use Siri to Control CarPlay.

With Siri Eyes Free (available in select cars), use your voice to control features of your iPhone without looking at or touching iPhone. To connect iPhone to your car, use Bluetooth (refer to the user guide that came with your car if you need to). To activate Siri, press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel until you hear the Siri tone, then make a request.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Change Siri settings on iPhone

You can change the voice for Siri, prevent access to Siri when your device is locked, and more.

For information about how to set up and use Siri, see Ask Siri on iPhone.

Change when Siri responds

Go to Settings 🔘 > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *Prevent Siri from responding to the voice command "Hey Siri":* Turn off Listen for "Hey Siri."

- *Prevent Siri from responding to the side or Home button:* Turn off Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Press Home for Siri (on an iPhone with a Home button).

- *Prevent access to Siri when iPhone is locked:* Turn off Allow Siri When Locked.

- *Change the language Siri responds to:* Tap Language, then select a new language.

You can also activate Siri by typing. See Type instead of speaking to Siri.

Change how Siri responds

Go to Settings 🔘 > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *Change the voice for Siri:* (not available in all languages) Tap Siri Voice, then choose a different variety or voice.

- *Change when Siri provides voice responses:* Tap Siri Responses, then choose an option below Spoken Responses.

- *Always see the response from Siri onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Siri Captions.

- *See your request onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Speech.

Hide apps when you activate Siri

If you don't want the active app to remain visible behind Siri, go to Settings ⚙️ > Accessibility > Siri, then turn off Show Apps Behind Siri.

Change where Siri Suggestions appear

Go to Settings ⚙️ > Siri & Search, then turn on or off any of the following:

- Allow Notifications

- Show in App Library & Spotlight

- Show When Sharing

- Show When Listening

See Siri Suggestions on iPhone.

Change Siri settings for a specific app

You can change which apps you can use with Siri, as well as the Siri Suggestions and Siri Shortcuts settings for any app.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Siri & Search, then scroll down and select an app.

2. Turn settings on or off.

Adjust the Siri voice volume

You can say something like, "Turn up the volume" or "Turn down the volume."

Or use the volume buttons. See Adjust the volume on iPhone.

Retrain Siri with your voice

Go to Settings ⚙ > Siri & Search, turn off Listen for "Hey Siri," then turn on Listen for "Hey Siri" again.

To change Siri accessibility settings, see Use accessibility features with Siri on iPhone.

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article If "Hey Siri" isn't working on your iPhone or iPad.

Family Sharing

Set up Family Sharing on iPhone

When you set up Family Sharing, family members can share purchases, subscriptions, their location, and more—without sharing accounts. You can also set up parental controls for children.

One adult family member—the *organizer*—sets up a family sharing group and invites up to five other family members to participate. When family members join, they have instant access to the shared content.

Family Sharing is available on eligible devices. See the Apple Support article System requirements for iCloud.

Create a Family Sharing group

You only need to set up Family Sharing on one device. Then it's available on all your devices that are signed in with the same Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings 🖼️ > [*your name*] > Family Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions to set up your Family Sharing group.

   When you add an adult family member, you can designate them as a parent or guardian. Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

2. Tap a feature you want to set up for your Family Sharing group, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   Depending on the features you choose, you may be asked to set up a subscription. If you choose to share App Store, music, movie, TV, and book purchases with your family members, you agree to pay for any purchases they initiate while part of the Family Sharing group. Adult and teen family members can turn off purchase sharing for themselves.

   You can see what you're sharing with your family and adjust sharing settings at any time. Features you share with your family appear above those you haven't shared.

What you can do with Family Sharing

With a Family Sharing group, you can set up or share the following:

- *Apple and App Store subscriptions:* You can share Apple subscriptions, including iCloud+, and eligible App Store subscriptions. See Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone.

- *Purchases:* You can share iTunes Store, App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases. See Download family members' purchases on iPhone.

- *Locations:* When you share your location with family members, they can use the Find My app 🟢 to see your location and help locate a missing device. See Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone.

- *Apple Card and Apple Cash:* You can share Apple Card with trusted members of your Family Sharing group or set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only).

- *Parental controls:* You can manage your children's purchases and how they use their Apple devices. See Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone.

Add or remove members from your Family Sharing group on iPhone

In a Family Sharing group, the organizer can add family members who have an Apple ID. The organizer, a parent, or a guardian can add a child to the group and create an Apple ID for them.

The family organizer can remove members or disband the group, and family members who aren't teens with parental controls or children can remove themselves. Children need to be moved to another Family Sharing group if you remove them from your group or disband the group. See the Apple Support article Move a child to another group using Family Sharing.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Add a family member with an Apple ID

The organizer of the Family Sharing group can add a family member who has their own Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Family Sharing, then tap Add Member.

2. Tap Invite People, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   You can send the invitation using AirDrop, Messages, or Mail. If you're near the family member, you can also tap Invite in Person and ask the family member to enter their Apple ID and password on your device.

Create an Apple ID for a child

If a child is too young to create their own Apple ID, the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can add the child to the Family Sharing group and create an Apple ID for them.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Family Sharing.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *If you're the organizer:* Tap Add Member, tap Create an Account for a Child, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   - *If you're a parent or guardian:* Tap Add Child, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about child accounts and the age at which a child can create their own Apple ID, see the Apple Support article Create an Apple ID for your child.

Remove a member from a family group

The organizer of a Family Sharing group can remove other members. When a family member is removed, they immediately lose access to any shared content and subscriptions.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Family Sharing.

2. Tap [*member's name*], then tap Remove [*member's name*] from Family.

Leave a Family Sharing group

When you leave a Family Sharing group, you stop sharing your purchases and subscriptions with family members and immediately lose access to any content they've shared.

Note: The organizer can't leave the Family Sharing group. If you want to change the organizer, you must disband the group, and have another adult create a new one.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Family Sharing.

2. Tap [*your name*], then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

Disband a Family Sharing group

The organizer can disband a family group. When a Family Sharing group is disbanded, all members immediately lose access to the shared content and subscriptions.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Family Sharing > [*your name*].

2. Tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone

When you're in a Family Sharing group, you can share Apple subscriptions and eligible App Store subscriptions with other family members.

If your Family Sharing group has purchase sharing turned on, any subscriptions shared with the group are billed directly to the organizer's Apple ID account.

Not all services are available in all countries or regions, and some selections are subject to content restrictions set in Screen Time.

Share Apple subscriptions

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Family Sharing.

2. Tap a subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   See any of the following to learn more.

   - *Apple Arcade:* See Subscribe to Apple Arcade on iPhone. All members of your family can download and play Apple Arcade games from the App Store. Each player gets a personalized account—your progress is carried over between devices.

   - *Apple Fitness+:* See All about Apple Fitness+ in the Apple Watch User Guide. All members of your family can access workouts in the Fitness app on their iPhone or iPad.

   - *Apple Music:* See Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone. With a family subscription, each family member gets their own music library and personal recommendations.

   - *Apple News+:* See Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone. All members of your family can read Apple News+ publications for no additional charge.

   - *Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels:* See Subscribe to Apple TV+ on iPhone and Subscribe to Apple TV channels. Each family member can watch on their iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, using their own Apple ID and password.

   - *iCloud+:* See Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPhone. When you share iCloud+, all family members have access to iCloud+ features and storage. For storage, you only share the space—your photos and documents stay private and everyone keeps using their own accounts.

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Share App Store subscriptions

You can choose which eligible App Store 🅰 subscriptions you share with family members. For information about the App Store, see Get apps in the App Store on iPhone.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Subscriptions.

2. Do either of the following:

   - *Share all new subscriptions:* Turn on Share New Subscriptions. When you purchase a new subscription that's eligible for sharing, it's shared with your family members by default.

   - *Change the settings of a specific subscription:* Tap a subscription, then turn Share with Family on or off.

     If you don't see Share with Family, the subscription is not eligible for sharing.

To see which subscriptions you're already sharing, go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Family Sharing.

You can also share iTunes Store, App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases with family members. See Download family members' purchases on iPhone.

Download family members' purchases on iPhone

When you set up Family Sharing, you and up to five family members can share iTunes Store, App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases.

When your family shares App Store, music, movie, TV, and book purchases, all items are billed directly to the family organizer's Apple ID account. Adult and teen family members can turn off purchase sharing for themselves. The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone.

Once purchased, an item is added to the initiating family member's account and eligible purchases are shared with the rest of the family.

Download shared purchases from the iTunes Store

1. Open the iTunes Store ⭐, tap More, then tap Purchased.

2. Choose a family member.

3. Tap a category (for example, Music), tap a purchased item, then tap ⬇.

See Manage your iTunes Store purchases and settings on iPhone.

Download shared purchases from the App Store

1. Open the App Store 🅰.

2. Tap 👤—or your profile picture—at the top right.

3. Tap Purchased, choose a family member, then tap ⬇.

See Manage App Store purchases, subscriptions, settings, and restrictions on iPhone.

Download shared purchases from Apple Books

1. Open the Books app 📙.

2. Tap 👤, or your profile picture, at the top right.

3. Tap the name of a family member under Family Purchases, then tap a category (for example, Books or Audiobooks).

4. Tap All, Recent Purchases, or a genre, then tap ⬇ next to a purchased item to download it.

See also Buy books and audiobooks in Apple Books on iPhone.

Download shared purchases from the Apple TV app

1. Open the Apple TV app .

2. Tap Library, tap Family Sharing, then choose a family member.

3. Tap a category (for example, TV Shows or Movies) or a genre, tap a purchased item, then tap ☁️ to download it.

   See also Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone.

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books.

You can also share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members.

Stop sharing purchases with your family members on iPhone

With Family Sharing, the organizer can turn on purchase sharing. Any purchases family members make from the iTunes Store, the App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV are billed directly to the organizer's Apple ID account.

If adult and teen family members don't want to share purchases with family members, they can turn off purchase sharing for themselves.

Note: The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone.

---

1. Go to Settings 🖼️ > [*your name*] > Family Sharing.

2. Tap Purchase Sharing, then turn off Share Purchases with Family.

   If the organizer wants to turn off purchase sharing entirely, they can tap Stop Purchase Sharing.

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books.

Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone

With Family Sharing, you can share your location with members of your Family Sharing group and help them find lost devices. When the family organizer sets up location sharing in Family Sharing settings, the organizer's location is automatically shared with everyone in the family. Then, family members can choose whether or not to share their location.

Share your location with family members

When you share locations with your family, they can see your location in Find My. You can also get notified when family members change their locations—for example, if a child leaves school during school hours.

Note: To share your location, you must have Location Services turned on in Settings 🕸️ > Privacy. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Family Sharing > Location Sharing, then turn on Share My Location.

2. If your iPhone isn't currently sharing your location, tap Use This iPhone as My Location.

3. Tap the name of a family member you want to share your location with, then tap Share My Location.

   You can repeat this step for each family member you want to share your location with. Each family member receives a message that you're sharing your location and can choose to share their location with you.

4. To stop sharing your location with a family member, tap the name of the family member, then tap Stop Sharing My Location.

Locate a family member's device

After you share your location with members of your Family Sharing group, they can help locate a missing device that you added to the Find My app.

See Locate a device in Find My on iPhone.

Your devices are at the top of the list, and your family members' devices are below yours.

Family members' devices appear below yours.

You can also use Find My iPhone on iCloud.com to locate a family member's missing device. See Locate a device in Find My iPhone on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only)

You can use Family Sharing with the Wallet app 🗂. The organizer of the Family Sharing group can set up Apple Cash for a child. They can also share Apple Card with trusted members of their Family Sharing group.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Set up Apple Cash Family

The family organizer can set up Apple Cash Family in Family Sharing settings so they can set up Apple Cash for a child. They can use Wallet to see the card balance, monitor transactions, and limit who the child can send money to.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > [*your name*] > Family Sharing.

2. Tap Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about system requirements and how to manage Apple Cash accounts, see the Apple Support article Set up and use Apple Cash Family.

Set up Apple Card Family

The family organizer can invite one eligible member of their Family Sharing group who is 18 years or older to co-own Apple Card. Members of the Family Sharing group who are 13 years or older can be added as participants.

1. In Wallet 🟫, tap Apple Card.

2. Tap ⬤, tap Share My Card, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about what owners, co-owners, and participants can do with Apple Card, see the Apple Support article Set up Apple Card Family and add a co-owner and participants.

Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone

With Family Sharing, the organizer can set up parental controls for children in the Family Sharing group. You can use Screen Time to manage how your children use their Apple devices. You can also turn on Ask to Buy, so children must receive approval for purchases or free downloads.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Set up Screen Time for a child

When you set up Screen Time for a child, you can manage settings for downtime, allowances for app use, the contacts your child communicates with, content ratings, and more. To use Screen Time, your child must be using an eligible device. See the Screen Time section in the Apple Support article System Requirements for iCloud.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > [*your name*] > Family Sharing > Screen Time.

2. Tap the name of a child in your family group, tap Turn On Screen Time, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   For information about Screen Time settings, see Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone.

Important: If you set up Screen Time for a child with Family Sharing and you forget the family Screen Time passcode, you can reset it. See the Apple Support article If you forgot your Screen Time passcode.

Turn on Ask to Buy for a child

Draft

When you set up Ask to Buy, a child's purchases must be approved by the family organizer or a parent or guardian in the family group.

1. Go to Settings 🖼 > [*your name*] > Family Sharing.

2. Tap Ask To Buy, then do one of the following:

    *   *If there isn't a child in your family group:* Tap Add Child or Create A Child Account, then follow the onscreen instructions.

    *   *If there is a child in your family group:* Tap the child's name, then turn on Ask To Buy.

Note: Age restrictions for Ask to Buy vary by region. In the United States, the family organizer can turn on Ask to Buy for any family member under age 18; for children under age 13, it's turned on by default.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy.

You can also set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only).

For information about child accounts in Family Sharing, see the Apple Support article Create an Apple ID for your child.

Screen Time

Keep track of your screen time on iPhone

You can use Screen Time to get information about how you and your family members spend time on your devices—which apps and websites you use, how often you pick up your device, and more. You can use this information to help you make decisions about managing the time you spend on devices. You can also schedule time away from your screen, set time limits for app use, and more.

Turn on Screen Time

Before you can view your app and device usage, you need to turn on Screen Time.

1. Go to Settings 🅢 > Screen Time.

2. Tap Turn On Screen Time, then tap Continue.

3. Tap This is My iPhone if you're setting up Screen Time for yourself on your iPhone.

   If you're setting up Screen Time for your child (or family member), tap This is My Child's iPhone.

4. To use Screen Time on all your Apple devices, scroll down, then turn on Share Across Devices.

If you've set up Family Sharing, you can turn on Screen Time for a family member through Family Sharing on your device. See Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone.

View your Screen Time report

After you turn on Screen Time, you can view a report of your device use with information including how much time you spend using certain kinds of apps, how often you pick up your iPhone and other devices, what apps send you the most notifications, and more.

1. Go to Settings 🅢 > Screen Time.

2. Tap See All Activity, then tap Week to see a summary of your weekly use, or tap Day to see a summary of your daily use.

Use the Screen Time widget to check your device use at a glance

To keep track of your device use from the Home Screen, you can add a widget to your Home Screen for Screen Time. The widget displays information from your Screen Time summary—the larger the widget you add, the more information it displays. You can quickly check your device use by glancing at the widget.

If you set up Screen Time for family members through Family Sharing, you can tap the widget to see a list of the people in your family group. Tap the name of a family member whose report you want to view.

Use Screen Time on all your devices

To share your Screen Time settings and reports across all your devices, make sure you're signed in with the same Apple ID on each device and Share Across Devices is turned on.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Screen Time.

2. Scroll down, then turn on Share Across Devices.

Set up Screen Time for yourself on iPhone

With Screen Time, you can manage your app use, schedule time away from your device, and more. You can change or turn off any of these settings at any time.

Schedule time away from the screen

In Screen Time, you can block apps and notifications for periods when you want time away from your devices. For example, you might want to schedule downtime during meals or at bedtime.

1. Go to Settings 🔅 > Screen Time, then turn on Screen Time if you haven't already.

2. Tap Downtime, then turn on Downtime.

3. Select Every Day or Customize Days, then set the start and end times.

Turn on downtime on demand

During downtime, only calls, messages, and apps you choose to allow are available. You can receive calls from contacts you've selected to allow communication with during downtime, and you can use apps you've chosen to allow at all times.

When you turn on downtime on demand, a five-minute reminder is sent before downtime is turned on. It stays on until the end of the day, or until the beginning of your scheduled downtime, if you've scheduled it.

1. Go to Settings 🔅 > Screen Time, then turn on Screen Time if you haven't already.

2. Tap Downtime, then tap Turn On Downtime Until Tomorrow, or Turn On Downtime Until Schedule (if Scheduled is turned on).

   To turn off downtime on demand, tap Turn Off Downtime.

Note: You can also turn on downtime on demand for a family member, either directly on their device, or through Family Sharing on your device.

Set limits for app use

You can set a time limit for a category of apps (for example, Games or Social Networking) and for individual apps.

1. Go to Settings 🔅 > Screen Time, then turn on screen time if you haven't already.

2. Tap App Limits, then tap Add Limit.

3. Select one or more app categories.

   To set limits for individual apps, tap the category name to see all the apps in that category, then select the apps you want to limit. If you select multiple categories or apps, the time limit you set applies to all of them.

4. Tap Next, then set the amount of time allowed.

   To set an amount of time for each day, tap Customize Days, then set limits for specific days.

5. When you finish setting limits, tap Add.

To temporarily turn off all app limits, tap App Limits on the App Limits screen. To temporarily turn off a time limit for a specific category, tap the category, then turn off App Limit.

To remove a time limit for a category, tap the category, then tap Delete Limit.

Set communication limits

In Screen Time, you can either allow or block communication—including incoming and outgoing phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from certain contacts in iCloud, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud, go to Settings 🌐 > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

2. Go to Settings 🌐 > Screen Time, then turn on Screen Time if you haven't already.

3. Tap Communication Limits, tap During Screen Time, then select one of the following for communication at all times (other than downtime):

   - *Contacts Only:* To allow communication only with your contacts.

   - *Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact:* To allow one-on-one conversations only with people in your contacts and group conversations that include at least one person in your contacts.

   - *Everyone:* To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.

4. Tap Back at the top left, then tap During Downtime.

   The option you selected for During Screen Time is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

   - *Choose From My Contacts:* To select contacts to allow communication with during Downtime.

   - *Add New Contact*: To add a person to your contacts and allow communication with that person during downtime.

If someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings tries to call you or send you a message, their communication won't go through.

If you try to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings, their name or number appears in red in your list of recent calls or messages, and your communication won't go through. You can communicate with them when the communication limit is changed. If the limit applies only to downtime, you receive a Time Limit message. You can resume communication with them when downtime is over.

To resume communication with contacts who are blocked by your Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

Choose apps and contacts you want to allow at all times

In Screen Time, you can specify apps that can be used, and contacts you can communicate with, at all times—even during downtime (for example, in the event of an emergency).

1. Go to Settings 🖳 > Screen Time > Always Allowed.

2. Below Allowed Apps, tap ➕ or ➖ next to an app to add or remove it from the Allowed Apps list.

3. To specify contacts you want to allow communication with, tap Contacts.

   The option you selected in Communication Limits appears here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

   • *Choose From My Contacts:* To select specific people to allow communication with.

   • *Add New Contact:* To add a new contact and allow communication with that person.

4. Tap Back at the top left.

Set content and privacy restrictions

You can block inappropriate content and set restrictions for iTunes Store and App Store purchases.

1. Go to Settings 🖳 > Screen Time.

2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

   You can also set a passcode that's required before changing settings.

3. Select options to set content allowances for iTunes Store and App Store purchases, app use, content ratings, and more.

   Note: To restrict SharePlay in FaceTime calls on your device (iOS 15.1 or later), go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Allowed Apps, then turn off SharePlay. To allow SharePlay, turn it on.

To share your Screen Time settings and reports across all your devices, make sure you're signed in with the same Apple ID and Share Across Devices is turned on.

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

Screen Time lets you see how family members are using their devices, so you can structure the time they spend on them. You can set up Screen Time for a family member on their device or, if you've set up Family Sharing, you can set up Screen Time for a family member through Family Sharing on your device. See Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone and the Apple Support article Family Sharing and Apple ID for your child.

Set downtime and app limits on a family member's device

1. On your family member's device, go to Settings 🔘 > Screen Time.

2. Tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My Child's iPhone.

3. To schedule downtime for your family member (time away from the screen), enter the start and end times, then tap Set Downtime.

4. To set limits for categories of apps you want to manage for your family member (for example, Games or Social Networking), select the categories.

   To see all the categories, tap Show All Categories.

5. Tap Set, enter an amount of time, then tap Set App Limit.

6. Tap Continue, then enter a Screen Time passcode for managing your family member's Screen Time settings.

Note: You can also turn on downtime on demand for a family member, either directly on their device, or through Family Sharing on your device (if you've set up Family Sharing).

Set communication limits on a family member's device

You can block incoming and outgoing communication on your family member's device—including phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from specific contacts, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud on your family member's device, go to Settings 🔘 > [*child's name*] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

   Note: You can only manage your family member's communication if they're using Contacts in iCloud.

2. On your family member's device, go to Settings 🔘 > Screen Time.

3. If you haven't already turned on Screen Time, tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My Child's iPhone.

4. Tap Communication Limits, then do any of the following:

    - *Limit communication at any time:* Tap During Screen Time, then select Contacts Only, Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact, or Everyone.

    - *Limit communication during downtime:* Tap During Downtime. The option you selected for During Screen Time is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts.

        If you select Specific Contacts, then tap either Choose From My Contacts or Add New Contact to select people you want to allow communication with during downtime.

    - *Manage a child's contacts:* If you're using Family Sharing, you can view, edit, add, or delete your child's contacts. Tap Manage [*child's name*] Contacts.

        If your child already has contacts in iCloud, they receive a notification on their device asking them to approve the request to manage them. If they don't have contacts, they don't get a notification and you can immediately add contacts.

        When you manage your child's contacts, a new row appears beneath Manage [*child's name*] Contacts to show how many contacts your child has. Tap the row to view and edit the contacts.

    - *Allow contact editing:* Tap Allow Contact Editing to turn off this option and prevent your child from editing their contacts.

        Turning off contact editing and limiting communication at any time to Contacts Only is a good way to control who your child can communicate with and when they can be contacted.

If someone who's currently blocked by the Communication Limit settings tries to call your family member (by phone or FaceTime), or send them a message, their communication won't go through.

If your family member tries to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by the Communication Limit settings, the recipient's name or number appears in red with an hourglass icon, and the communication won't go through. If the limit applies only to downtime, your family member receives a Time Limit message and can resume communication with the contact when downtime is over.

To allow your family member to communicate with contacts who are blocked by the Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

Turn communication safety for messages on or off on a family member's device

When communication safety is turned on in Screen Time, nudity in photos can be detected in the Messages app before the photos are sent or received by your child, and resources are provided to help your child handle the situation (U.S. only; iOS 15.2 or later). Apple doesn't get access to the photos as a result of this feature. See the Apple Support article About communication safety in Messages.

1. On your family member's device, go to Settings 🔘 > Screen Time.

2. If you haven't already turned on Screen Time, tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My Child's iPhone.

3. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Check for Sensitive Photos.

Choose which apps to allow at all times on a family member's device

You can set which apps you want your family member to be able to use at any time.

1. On your family member's device, go to Settings > Screen Time.

2. If you haven't already turned on Screen Time, tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My Child's iPhone.

3. Tap Always Allowed, then tap ➕ or ➖ next to an app to add or remove the app from the list.

   Note: If your family member needs health or accessibility apps, make sure they're in the Allowed Apps list. If Messages isn't always allowed, your family member may not be able to send or receive messages (including to emergency numbers and contacts) during downtime or after the app limit has expired.

Set content and privacy restrictions on a family member's device

You can help ensure that the content on your family member's device is age appropriate by limiting the explicitness ratings in Content & Privacy Restrictions.

1. On your family member's device, go to Settings 🔘 > Screen Time.

2. If you haven't already turned on Screen Time, tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My Child's iPhone.

3. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

4. Choose specific content and privacy options.

   Note: To protect your family member's hearing, scroll down, tap Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow. (This prevents changes to the maximum headphone volume.) See Reduce loud headphone sounds in Settings.

   Note: To restrict SharePlay in FaceTime calls for your family member (iOS 15.1 or later), go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Allowed Apps, then turn off SharePlay. To allow SharePlay, turn it on.

5. Tap ‹ at the top left.

Add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later

To add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later, follow the steps described in Set up Screen Time for yourself on iPhone.

Important: If you set up Screen Time for a family member on their device (not through Family Sharing), and you forget the Screen Time passcode, you can use your Apple ID to reset it. However, if you set up Screen Time for a family member on your device through Family Sharing and you forget your Screen Time passcode, you can reset it on your device using your device passcode, Touch ID, or Face ID.

Get a report of your device use on iPhone

When you have Screen Time set up, you can get a report of your device use.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Screen Time.

2. Tap See All Activity, then do any of the following:

   - Tap Week to see a summary of your weekly use.

   - Tap Day to see a summary of your daily use.

You can also view your summary by tapping a Screen Time Weekly Report notification when one appears on your screen. (If the notification disappears, you can find it in Notification Center.) Alternatively, you can add a Screen Time widget to your Home Screen to check your Screen Time report at a glance.

Accessories

Charging cable for iPhone

Your iPhone includes one of the following charging cables:

USB-C to Lightning Cable
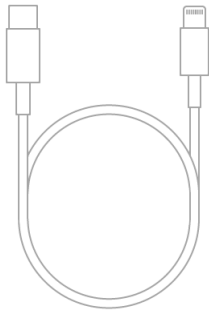
Lightning to USB Cable
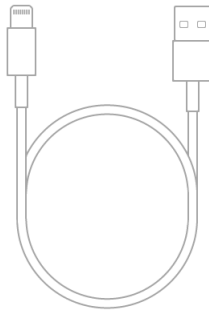
You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using a compatible power adapter (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also connect the included cable to your computer's USB port for charging, transferring files, and more.

Power adapters for iPhone

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using its charging cable (included) and a compatible power adapter (sold separately).

You can use the following Apple USB power adapters to charge iPhone. The size and style may vary depending on the country or region.

Apple 20W USB-C power adapter
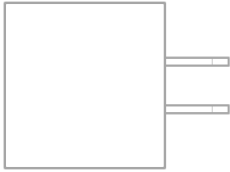
Note: For fast charging, iPhone 12 and later models require a power adapter with a minimum power output of 20 watts, such as the Apple 20W USB power adapter. If you use a third-party power adapter, it should meet these recommended specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase

- *Line Voltage:* 100 to 240 VAC

- *Output Voltage/Current:* 9 VDC/2.2 A

- *Minimum Power Output:* 20 W

- *Output Port:* USB-C

Apple 18W USB-C power adapter
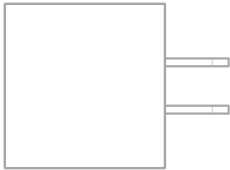
Apple 5W USB power adapter
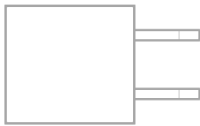
You can also use Apple USB power adapters for iPad and Mac notebooks to charge iPhone, and you can use third-party power adapters that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards.

MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

On iPhone 12 and later models, MagSafe chargers and battery packs snap to the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The magnets ensure proper alignment for fast wireless charging, and you can hold and use iPhone while it's charging.

MagSafe chargers can also charge AirPods and other iPhone models that support wireless charging. (MagSafe chargers, battery packs, cases, and sleeves are sold separately.)

Charge iPhone or AirPods with MagSafe Charger

1. Connect MagSafe Charger to power using the Apple 20W USB‑C power adapter or another compatible power adapter (sold separately).
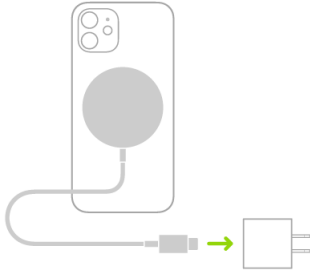
2. Do one of the following:

   - *iPhone 12 and later models:* Place MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.

     Note: If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone.

   - *Other iPhone models:* Place iPhone (supported models) face up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger, 🔋 appears in the status bar.

   - *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), or AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

   See the Apple Support article How to use your MagSafe Charger.

Charge iPhone or AirPods and Apple Watch with MagSafe Duo Charger

With MagSafe Duo Charger, you can charge your iPhone (supported models) or AirPods at the same time you charge your Apple Watch. (MagSafe Duo Charger, Apple Watch, and AirPods are sold separately.)
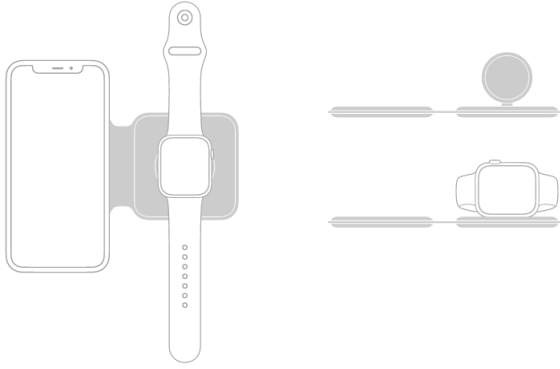
1. Connect MagSafe Duo Charger to power using the Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or another compatible power adapter (sold separately).
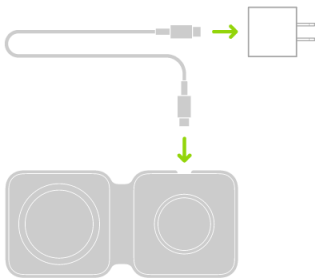
2. To charge iPhone or AirPods, do one of the following:

   - *iPhone:* Place iPhone face up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. Magnets on iPhone 12 and later models help you align iPhone with the charger, and the charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging. On other models, the battery charging indicator appears when you properly align iPhone with the charging surface. Unless your iPhone is in silent mode, you hear a chime when charging begins.

     Note: If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing iPhone on MagSafe Duo Charger.

   - *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), or AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

3. To charge Apple Watch, do one of the following:

    -   With the Apple Watch charging surface lying flat and the Apple Watch band open, place Apple Watch face up on the charging surface.

    -   With the Apple Watch charging surface raised, place Apple Watch on its side with its back against the charging surface. Apple Watch automatically goes into Nightstand mode, so you can also use it as an alarm clock.

    The concave charging surface magnetically snaps to the back of your Apple Watch and aligns it properly. When charging begins, a charging symbol appears on the watch face.

Charge iPhone with MagSafe Battery Pack

MagSafe Battery Pack magnetically attaches to iPhone 12 and later models and extends the battery life.

Note: If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Battery Pack.

-   *Charge your iPhone on the go:* Place MagSafe Battery Pack on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.

-   *See the battery status of MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone:* Check the Batteries widget in Today View or on the Home Screen. See Add a Batteries widget to your Home Screen.

-   *Charge MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone:* With MagSafe Battery Pack on iPhone, connect either device to power using the USB-C to Lightning Cable and Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or another compatible power adapter (minimum power output of 20 watts; sold separately). The status indicator on MagSafe Battery Pack is amber while charging, then turns green when charging is complete.

    Note: By default, charging is limited to 90 percent to optimize the lifespan of MagSafe Battery Pack. To remove the charging limit, open Control Center, tap Low Power Mode, then tap Charge past 90%.

    You can also charge MagSafe Battery Pack without iPhone.

See the Apple Support article How to use your MagSafe Battery Pack.

MagSafe cases and sleeves for iPhone

MagSafe cases and sleeves contain magnets that align iPhone with MagSafe chargers and battery packs. You can even hold and use iPhone while it's charging. See MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone. (Supported on iPhone 12 and later models. MagSafe cases, sleeves, chargers, and battery packs are sold separately.)

iPhone Leather Sleeve

When iPhone Leather Sleeve covers your iPhone (iPhone 12 and later models), you can do the following without removing the sleeve:

- *Get the current time:* If the clock window is dark, raise iPhone or tap the window.

- *See the charging status:* When you charge iPhone, the clock window indicates the battery level and its charging status.

- *See who's calling:* When a phone or FaceTime call arrives, the caller's name or number appears in the clock window.

  To answer, remove iPhone from the sleeve, then drag the slider.

  Or without removing iPhone, use your AirPods or Apple Watch (sold separately) to answer the call. (FaceTime video calls are answered with your video paused.)

- *Make an Express Transit payment:* Position the rear top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader at the transit gate. A confirmation message appears in the clock window. See Pay for your ride with Express Transit.

  If your iPhone is in Express Cards power reserve mode, confirmation messages don't appear in the clock window.

  If you carry a separate transit card in iPhone Leather Sleeve, your transit card is used for payment when you position the lower front of iPhone near the contactless reader.

When your iPhone is in iPhone Leather Sleeve, you can also use "Hey Siri," your AirPods, your Apple Watch, and CarPlay to make calls, ask questions, and do tasks that don't require you to look at or touch the iPhone screen.

Note: If you remove your iPhone from the sleeve and see the time for the clock window instead of the Lock Screen, tap ⊗ in the top-right corner.

Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

You can wirelessly charge iPhone 8 and later using a Qi-certified charger (sold separately). You can also use a Qi-certified charger to charge AirPods.

Charge iPhone or AirPods with a Qi-certified charger

1. Connect the charger to power. Use the power adapter that came with your charger or a power adapter recommended by the manufacturer.

2. Do one of the following:

- *iPhone:* Place iPhone face up on the center of the charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger, 🔋 appears in the status bar.

- *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), or AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

See the Apple Support articles How to wirelessly charge your iPhone and Charge your AirPods and learn about battery life.

AirPods and EarPods

Use AirPods with iPhone

After you pair AirPods with iPhone, you can use AirPods to listen to audio playing on iPhone, make and answer calls, listen and respond to messages, hear reminders when you need them, listen to conversations more easily in noisy environments, and more.

Pair AirPods with your iPhone

1. On iPhone, go to Settings ⚙️ > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.

2. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.

3. Do one of the following:

- *AirPods (1st, 2nd, and 3rd generation) or AirPods Pro:* Open the case with your AirPods inside, then hold it next to your iPhone (iOS 15.1 or later required for 3rd generation AirPods).

- *AirPods Max:* Take your AirPods Max out of the Smart Case, then hold AirPods Max next to your iPhone.

4. Follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Done.

   Note: If you don't see onscreen instructions for pairing your AirPods Max, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then select your AirPods. If the status light doesn't flash white on AirPods Max, press and hold the noise control button until it does.

Your AirPods are automatically paired with all of your supported devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID (iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, watchOS 3, or later required).

Note: If you can't pair your AirPods, see the Apple Support article If your AirPods won't connect.

Do more with AirPods and your iPhone

See the AirPods User Guide for detailed instructions on how to get the most out of your AirPods.

For information about protecting hearing from loud volume while listening to AirPods with iPhone, see Use headphone audio level features on iPhone.

Use EarPods with iPhone

You can use EarPods (sold separately) to listen to music and videos and to make calls on iPhone. EarPods feature a microphone, volume buttons, and the center button.

Use the center button to answer and end calls, control audio and video playback, and use Siri, even when iPhone is locked.
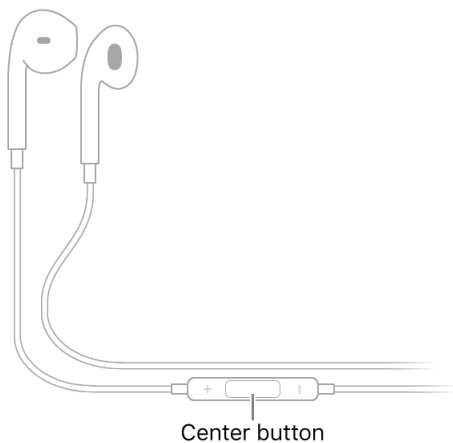
Center button

Control audio with your EarPods

- *Pause:* Press the center button. Press again to resume playback.

- *Skip forward:* Press the center button twice quickly.

- *Skip backward:* Press the center button three times quickly.

- *Fast-forward:* Press the center button twice quickly and hold.

Manage calls using your EarPods

- *Answer an incoming call:* Press the center button.

- *End the current call:* Press the center button.

- *Switch to an incoming or on-hold call, and put the current call on hold:* Press the center button. Press again to switch back to the first call.

Ask Siri with your EarPods

Press and hold the center button until you hear a beep. Let go, then ask Siri to perform a task or answer your question. See Ask Siri on iPhone.

For information about protecting hearing from loud volume while listening to EarPods with iPhone, see Use headphone audio level features on iPhone.

Use Apple Watch with iPhone

Pair Apple Watch with iPhone

On your iPhone, tap the Apple Watch app 🔘, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone in the Apple Watch User Guide. (Apple Watch sold separately.)

Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch

When you're wearing your Apple Watch (Series 3 and later), you can use it to securely unlock your iPhone (models with Face ID) when you're wearing a face mask (watchOS 7.4 or later required).

Note: On iPhone 13 models, it's not necessary to use Apple Watch to unlock iPhone when you're wearing a face mask. See Set up Face ID on iPhone.

To allow Apple Watch to unlock your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Face ID & Passcode.

2. Scroll down, then turn on Apple Watch (below Unlock with Apple Watch).

   If you have more than one watch, turn on the setting for each one.

To unlock your iPhone while you're wearing your Apple Watch and a face mask, raise iPhone or tap its screen to wake it, then glance at your iPhone.

Note: To unlock your iPhone, your Apple Watch must have a passcode, be unlocked and on your wrist, and be close to your iPhone.

Work out with Apple Fitness+

Used in conjunction with Apple Watch, Apple Fitness+ is a subscription service that lets you choose from a catalog of workouts led by expert trainers. While you follow a workout on your iPhone, in-session metrics like heart rate and calories burned (which are captured by your watch) appear on your screen. (watchOS 7.2 or later required; Apple Fitness+ availability varies by country or region.)

See All about Apple Fitness+ in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Collect health and fitness data from Apple Watch

Apple Watch can send data about your health and fitness to iPhone for you to view in Health. Apple Watch can also send notifications about high heart rates, low heart rates, loud environmental sounds, and more to your iPhone.

See Track important health information in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Apple TV, smart TVs, and video displays

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

You can use your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV to watch videos and view photos streamed from your iPhone.

Play video on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. While playing video in the Apple TV app �📺 or another supported video app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the controls.

2. Tap 📺, then choose your Apple TV or AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPhone screen.

Play the movie on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

Show photos on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. In Photos 🌸 on your iPhone, tap a photo, then tap ⬆.

2. Swipe up, tap 🖥, then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To stop streaming photos, tap 📺 near the top of the iPhone screen, then tap Turn off AirPlay.

Turn automatic AirPlay streaming on or off

You can allow your iPhone to discover and automatically connect to any frequently used Apple TV or smart TV when playing content from apps that you regularly use with AirPlay.

Go to Settings ⚙ > General > AirPlay & Handoff, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

Mirror your iPhone on Apple TV or a smart TV

On Apple TV or a smart TV, you can show whatever appears on your iPhone.

1. Open Control Center on your iPhone.

2. Tap 🔲, then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To switch back to iPhone, open Control Center, tap 🔲, then tap Stop Mirroring.

Note: For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the Home accessories website.

To learn more about using Apple TV, see the Apple TV User Guide.

Connect iPhone to a display with a cable

With the appropriate cable or adapter, you can connect your iPhone to a secondary display, like a computer monitor, TV, or projector.

---

1. Plug a Lightning Digital AV Adapter or Lightning to VGA Adapter into the charging port on the bottom of iPhone.

2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to your adapter.

3. Connect the other end of your HDMI or VGA cable to your monitor, TV, or projector.

4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on your monitor, TV, or projector. If you need help, use your display's manual.

The adapters have an extra port so you can connect the charging cable and charge your iPhone while connected to a monitor, TV, or projector.

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and AirPlay 2 speakers

You can play audio from iPhone on wireless devices like HomePod, Apple TV, AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, and Bluetooth headphones and speakers.

Play audio from iPhone on a wireless device

1. On your iPhone, open an audio app, such as Podcasts 🎙️ or Music 🎵, then choose an item to play.

2. Tap 📡, then choose a playback destination.

Choose the playback destination.
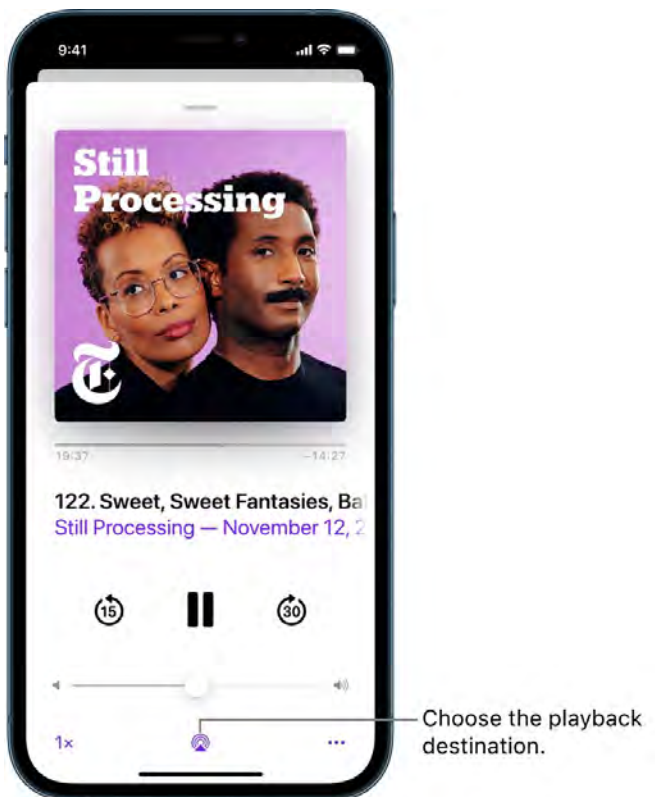
Note: If your AirPlay 2-enabled devices don't appear in the list of playback destinations, make sure they're on the same Wi-Fi network. With a Bluetooth device, the playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

To select the playback destination, you can also tap 📡 on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

Note: For information about setting up a Bluetooth audio device, see Pair a Bluetooth headphone, car kit, game controller, or other device.

Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices

With AirPlay 2 and iPhone, you can play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices connected to the same Wi-Fi network. For example, you can play a party playlist on HomePod speakers in the living room and kitchen, on an Apple TV in the bedroom, and on an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV in the den.

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like:

- "Stop playing music everywhere"

- "Set the dining room volume to 10 percent"

- "What's playing in the kitchen?"

- "Play a song I like in the kitchen"

- "Add the living room speaker"

- "Remove the music from the kitchen"

- "Move the music to the den"

You can also choose playback destinations from the iPhone screen.

1. Tap ⦿ in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or on the Now Playing screen for the app you're listening to.

2. Select each device you want to use.

Note: Devices arranged in a stereo pair are treated as a single audio device.

Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod

While playing audio from Music, Podcasts, or another audio app, bring iPhone close to the top of HomePod.

Audio hand off has the following requirements:

- iPhone and HomePod must be in the same HomeKit home and on the same Wi-Fi network.

- You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.

- Your devices must have Bluetooth turned on in Settings 🔘 and be within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).

To disable Handoff between iPhone and HomePod and other devices, go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Handoff.

Note: To learn more about using HomePod speakers and Apple TV, see the HomePod User Guide and Apple TV User Guide.

For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the Home accessories website.

Magic Keyboard

Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can use Magic Keyboard, including Magic Keyboard with Numeric Keypad, to enter text on iPhone. Magic Keyboard connects to iPhone using Bluetooth.

Pair Magic Keyboard

1. Make sure the keyboard is turned on and charged.

2. On iPhone, go to Settings 🔘 > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.

3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.

Note: If Magic Keyboard is already paired with another device, you must unpair them before you can connect Magic Keyboard to your iPhone. For iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, see Unpair a Bluetooth device. On Mac, choose Apple menu > System Preferences > Bluetooth, select the device, then Control-click its name.

Reconnect Magic Keyboard to iPhone

Magic Keyboard disconnects when you turn its switch to Off or when you move it or iPhone out of Bluetooth range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

To reconnect, turn the keyboard switch to On, or bring the keyboard and iPhone back into range, then tap any key.

Enter characters with diacritical marks while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

If your Magic Keyboard doesn't include accents and other diacritical marks for the language you're typing, you can use an Option key modifier or the onscreen keyboard to enter those marks.

Use the Option key to enter a diacritical mark for a character

To enter a character with a diacritical mark, you can press the Option key on Magic Keyboard to select a mark.

1. Do one of the following:

   - Add a language keyboard that supports diacritical marks, then in an app, switch to that language keyboard.

     For example, add the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard, then in an app, press and hold the Control key on Magic Keyboard, then press the Space bar until you select Español (México).

   - Go to Settings ⚙ > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then choose an alternative keyboard layout that supports diacritical marks.

     For example, if you have the English (US) language keyboard, tap English (US), then choose U.S. International — PC or ABC — Extended.

2. In an app, press and hold the Option key, then press a key that enters a diacritical mark.

   For example, the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard and the U.S. International — PC alternative layout support these diacritical marks:

   - *Acute accent* (for example, *é*): Option-E.

   - *Grave accent* (for example, *è*): Option-`.

   - *Tilde* (for example, *ñ*): Option-N.

   - *Diaeresis or umlaut* (for example, *ü*): Option-U.

   - *Circumflex* (for example, *ê:*) Option-I.

3. Press the letter.

   For example, to enter *ñ* using the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard or the U.S. International — PC alternative layout, press Option-N, then type an *n*.

Note: The ABC - Extended alternative layout also allows you to enter tone marks for typing Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin orthography. For example, to type ǔ in lǚxíng ("travel"), press Option-V, then type a *v*. In addition, the ABC - Extended layout allows you to type diacritical marks and letters from several different European languages, such as Czech, French, German, Hungarian, and Polish.

Use the onscreen keyboard to enter a diacritical mark

1. To show the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ on Magic Keyboard.

2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol on the keyboard that's related to the character you want.

   For example, to enter é, touch and hold the *e* key.

3. Slide your finger to choose a variant.

4. To hide the onscreen keyboard when you're finished, press ⏏ on Magic Keyboard.

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

With Magic Keyboard, you can switch between the language keyboard for your region, an emoji keyboard, other language keyboards that you add, and the onscreen keyboard.

Switch between language keyboards and the onscreen emoji keyboard

1. On Magic Keyboard, press and hold the Control key.

2. Press the Space bar to cycle between the language keyboard for your region, the emoji keyboard, and any keyboards you added for typing in different languages.

Show or hide the onscreen keyboard

To show the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ on Magic Keyboard. To hide the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ again.

Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can dictate text instead of typing it on Magic Keyboard.

Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. Cellular data charges may apply.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > General > Keyboard, turn on Enable Dictation, then choose a dictation shortcut.

2. To insert text by dictating, tap to place the insertion point, then press the dictation shortcut key twice.

3. To use Magic Keyboard again, quickly press the dictation shortcut key twice.

While dictating text, you can also add punctuation or formatting by speaking it.

Use shortcuts on Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can perform searches and use text replacements from anywhere on iPhone without taking your hands away from Magic Keyboard.

- *Open Search:* Press Command-Space.

  Note: You can change the actions that are performed by the Command key (and other modifier keys like Caps Lock). Go to Settings 🔘 > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

- *Use text replacements:* You can set up text replacements that enter words or phrases after you type just a few characters. For example, type "omw" to enter "On my way!" See Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone.

- *Choose additional accessibility keyboard shortcuts:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards > Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access. See Control iPhone with an external keyboard.

Choose an alternative layout for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

With an alternative keyboard layout, you can enter letters and marks that are different from the ones on Magic Keyboard. For example, with the ABC - Extended keyboard layout, you can type letters and enter diacritical marks for several different European languages and tone marks for Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard.

2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then choose an alternative layout from the list.

Change typing assistance options for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can change Magic Keyboard options for autocorrection, autocapitalization, and more.

Go to Settings 🔘 > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then do any of the following:

- *Turn Auto-Capitalization on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature capitalizes proper nouns and the first words in sentences as you type.

- *Turn Auto-Correction on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature corrects the spelling as you type.

- *Turn "." Shortcut on or off:* When this option is selected, double-tapping the space bar inserts a period followed by a space.

- *Change the action performed by the Command key or other modifier key:* Tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

Connect external storage devices to iPhone

You can use the Files app 📁 and other supported apps to access files stored on external devices, such as USB drives and SD cards, connected to your iPhone.

Connect a USB drive or an SD card reader

1. Attach the USB drive or SD card reader to the charging port on your iPhone using a compatible connector or adapter.

   You may need the Lightning to USB Camera Adapter, Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter, or Lightning to SD Card Camera Reader (all sold separately).

   Note: A USB drive must have only a single data partition, and it must be formatted as FAT, FAT32, exFAT (FAT64), or APFS. To change the formatting of a USB drive, use a Mac or PC.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Insert an SD memory card into a card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.

     Note: You can import photos and videos from the memory card directly to the Photos app. See Import photos and videos on iPhone.

   - *View the contents of the drive or memory card:* In a supported app (for example, Files), tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device below Locations. If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again at the bottom of the screen.

   - *Disconnect the drive or card reader:* Remove it from the charging port on iPhone.

Note: The Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter can be powered with a USB power adapter. This allows you to connect USB devices with higher power requirements, such as external hard drives, to iPhone.

Set up and use Bluetooth accessories on iPhone

Using a Bluetooth connection, you can use third-party devices such as wireless keyboards, headphones, speakers, car kits, game controllers, and more with iPhone.

Pair a Bluetooth headphone, car kit, game controller, or other device

1. Follow the instructions that came with the device to put it in discovery mode.

   Note: To pair AirPods, see the instructions for your model in the "Pair and connect" section in the AirPods User Guide.

2. On iPhone, go to Settings 🔘 > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then tap the name of the device.

iPhone must be within about 33 feet (10 meters) of the Bluetooth device.

Customize a wireless game controller

After you pair a compatible game controller, you can customize it for supported games from Apple Arcade and the App Store.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > General > Game Controller.

2. Tap the buttons you want to change.

3. To customize for a specific app, tap Add App.

Note: Apple Arcade availability varies by country or region.

Play audio from iPhone on a Bluetooth audio device

1. On your iPhone, open an audio app, such as Music, then choose an item to play.

2. Tap ⦿, then choose your Bluetooth device.

   While audio is playing, you can change the playback destination on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

The playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

For information about protecting your hearing from loud volume while listening to headphones with iPhone, see Use headphone audio level features on iPhone.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding hearing loss and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Bypass your Bluetooth device for calls

To use the iPhone receiver or speaker for calls, do any of the following:

- Answer a call by tapping the iPhone screen.

- During a call, tap Audio, then choose iPhone or Speaker Phone.

- Turn off the Bluetooth device, unpair it, or move out of range.

- Go to Settings ⚙, tap Bluetooth, then turn off Bluetooth.

Unpair a Bluetooth device

Go to Settings ⚙ > Bluetooth, tap the information button ⓘ next to the name of the device, then tap Forget This Device.

If you don't see the Devices list, make sure Bluetooth is on.

If you have AirPods and you tap Forget This Device, they're automatically removed from other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Disconnect from Bluetooth devices

To quickly disconnect from all Bluetooth devices without turning Bluetooth off, open Control Center, then tap ✳.

To learn about Bluetooth privacy settings on iPhone, see the Apple Support article If an app would like to use Bluetooth on your device. If you have trouble connecting a Bluetooth device, see the Apple Support article If you can't connect a Bluetooth accessory to your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Note: The use of certain accessories with iPhone may affect wireless performance. Not all iOS accessories are fully compatible with iPhone. Turning on airplane mode may eliminate audio interference between iPhone and an accessory. Reorienting or relocating iPhone and the connected accessory may improve wireless performance.

Print from iPhone

Use AirPrint to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, and Safari. Many apps available on the App Store also support AirPrint.

iPhone and the printer must be on the same Wi-Fi network. See the Apple Support article About AirPrint.

See the status of a print job

Open the App Switcher, then tap Print Center.

The badge on the icon shows how many documents are in the queue.

To cancel a print job, select it in Print Center, then tap Cancel Printing.

Print a document

Tap ⬆, •••, or ⤺ (depending on the app you're using), then tap Print. (Swipe up if you don't see Print.)

Use iPhone with iPad, iPod touch, Mac, and PC

Share your internet connection from iPhone

You can use Personal Hotspot to share a cellular internet connection from your iPhone to other devices. Personal Hotspot is useful when the other devices don't have internet access from a Wi-Fi network.

Note: Personal Hotspot is not available with all carriers. Additional fees may apply. The number of devices that can join your Personal Hotspot at one time depends on your carrier and iPhone model. Contact your carrier for more information.

Set up Personal Hotspot on iPhone

Go to Settings 🖼 > Cellular, tap Set Up Personal Hotspot, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: If you don't see Set Up Personal Hotspot as an option, and Cellular Data is turned on in Settings > Cellular, contact your carrier about adding Personal Hotspot to your plan.

You can change the following settings:

- *Change the Wi-Fi password for your Personal Hotspot:* Go to Settings > Personal Hotspot > Wi-Fi Password.

- *Turn off Personal Hotspot and disconnect devices:* Go to Settings > Personal Hotspot, then turn off Allow Others to Join.

If you set up your iPhone to use two SIMs, Personal Hotspot uses the line you select for cellular data. (See Manage your cellular plans for Dual SIM.)

Connect a Mac or PC to your Personal Hotspot

You can use Wi-Fi, a USB cable, or Bluetooth to connect a Mac or PC to your Personal Hotspot. Do one of the following:

- *Use Wi-Fi to connect from a Mac:* Click the Wi-Fi status menu 📶 in the menu bar, then choose your iPhone from the list of available networks.

  If asked for a password, enter the password shown in Settings > Personal Hotspot on your iPhone.

  The Wi-Fi status icon 📶 in the menu bar changes to the Personal Hotspot icon 🔗 as long as your Mac remains connected to your Personal Hotspot.

  Note: You can connect your devices to Personal Hotspot without entering a password when you're signed in with the same Apple ID on your Mac and iPhone, and Bluetooth and Wi-Fi are turned on on both devices.

- *Use Wi-Fi to connect from a PC:* In the Wi-Fi settings on your PC, choose your iPhone, then enter the password shown in Settings > Personal Hotspot on your iPhone.

- *Use USB:* Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable. If you receive an alert that says Trust this Computer?, tap Trust. In your computer's network preferences, choose iPhone, then configure the network settings.

- *Use Bluetooth:* To make sure your iPhone is discoverable, go to Settings 🔘 > Bluetooth and leave the screen showing. Then on a Mac, choose Apple Menu > System Preferences, click Bluetooth, select your iPhone, then click Connect. On your iPhone, tap the name of your Mac, then follow the onscreen instructions on your Mac.

  On a PC, follow the manufacturer directions to set up a Bluetooth network connection.

Connect iPad, iPod touch, or another iPhone to your Personal Hotspot

On the other device, go to Settings 🔘 > Wi-Fi, then choose your iPhone from the list of available networks.

If asked for a password on the other device, enter the password shown in Settings > Personal Hotspot on your iPhone.

If your iPhone and the other device are set up as follows, you can connect the devices without entering a password:

- You're signed in with the same Apple ID on each device.

- Each device has Bluetooth turned on.

- Each device has Wi-Fi turned on.

When a device is connected, a blue band appears at the top of your iPhone screen. The Personal Hotspot icon 🔗 appears in the status bar of the connected device.

With Family Sharing, you can share your Personal Hotspot with any member of your family automatically or after they ask for approval. See Set up Family Sharing on iPhone.

When you share a Personal Hotspot from your iPhone, it uses cellular data for the internet connection. To monitor your cellular data network usage, go to Settings > Cellular. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

If you need more help using Personal Hotspot, see the Apple Support article If Personal Hotspot is not working.

Allow phone calls on your iPad, iPod touch, and Mac

You can make and receive phone calls on your iPad, iPod touch, and Mac by relaying calls through your iPhone.

Note: Cellular charges may apply. Wi-Fi Calling is not available from all carriers.

Before you begin

On your iPhone and your other devices, do the following (iOS 9, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.10, or later required):

- Set up FaceTime.

- Sign in with the same Apple ID.

Allow phone calls on your other devices from iPhone

You first set up your iPhone, and then set up your other devices.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ > Cellular.

2. If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line (below Cellular Plans).

3. Do any of the following:

   - Tap Calls on Other Devices, turn on Allow Calls on Other Devices, then choose the devices on which you'd like to make and receive calls.

     This allows other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID to make and receive calls when they're nearby your iPhone and connected to Wi-Fi.

   - Tap Wi-Fi Calling, then turn on Add Wi-Fi Calling For Other Devices.

     This allows other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID to make and receive calls even when your iPhone isn't nearby.

4. On your other devices, do the following:

   - *On your iPad or iPod touch:* Go to Settings > FaceTime, then turn on FaceTime and Calls from iPhone. If you're asked, turn on Wi-Fi Calling.

   - *On your Mac:* Open FaceTime, choose FaceTime > Preferences > Settings, then select Calls from iPhone. If an Upgrade to Wi-Fi Calling button appears, click it, then follow the instructions.

Note: If you enable Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls may be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information may be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers may use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location.

Make or receive a phone call on your iPad, iPod touch, or Mac

- *Make a call:* Tap or click a phone number in Contacts, Calendar, FaceTime, Messages, Search, or Safari. Or open FaceTime, enter a contact or phone number, then tap 📞.

  If you make a call from another device by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.

- *Receive a call:* Swipe, tap, or click the notification to answer or ignore the call.

For more information about Wi-Fi calls, see the Apple Support article Make a call with Wi-Fi Calling.

Hand off tasks between iPhone and your other devices

With Handoff, you can start something on one device (iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch) and then pick it up on another device right where you left off. For example, you can start answering an email on your iPhone, then finish it in Mail on your Mac. You can use Handoff with many Apple apps—for example, Calendar, Contacts, and Safari. Some third-party apps may also work with Handoff.

Before you begin

To hand off tasks between iPhone and another device, make sure of the following:

- You're signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.

- Your devices are connected to Wi-Fi.

- Your devices are within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).

- On your Mac, Handoff is turned on in System Preferences > General, and Bluetooth is turned on in System Preferences > Bluetooth.

- On your iPhone and on another iOS or iPadOS device, Handoff is turned on in Settings ⚙ > General > AirPlay & Handoff, and Bluetooth is turned on in Settings.

- Each device has the minimum relevant software version installed: iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.10, watchOS 1.0, or later.

Hand off from another device to your iPhone

1. Open the App Switcher on iPhone. The Handoff icon of the app you're using on your other device appears at the bottom of the iPhone screen.

2. Tap the Handoff icon to continue working in the app.

Hand off from iPhone to another device

On the other device, click or tap the Handoff icon to continue working in the app.

The Handoff icon of the app you're using on iPhone appears in the following locations on other devices:

- *Mac:* The right end of the Dock (or at the bottom, depending on the Dock position).

- *iPad:* The right end of the Dock.

- *iPhone or iPod touch:* At the bottom of the App Switcher screen.

Turn off Handoff on your devices

- *iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch:* Go to Settings 🔘, then tap General > AirPlay & Handoff.

- *Mac:* Choose Apple Menu > System Preferences, click General, then deselect "Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices."

💡 **Tip:** When Handoff is on, you can use Universal Clipboard to copy and paste text, images, photos, and videos across devices.

Wirelessly stream video, photos, and audio from your iPhone to a Mac

You can use a nearby Mac to watch videos, view photos, and play audio streamed from your iPhone. You can also mirror your iPhone screen to the Mac. (macOS Monterey 12 or later required.)

Set up a Mac to allow streaming from your iPhone

1. On a Mac, choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Sharing, then select AirPlay Receiver.

2. Choose AirPlay Receiver from the service list, then if AirPlay Receiver isn't on, select the checkbox.

3. Choose an option for "Allow AirPlay for:"

   - To allow only devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID as on the Mac to stream to the Mac, select "Current user."

   - To allow others, select "Anyone on the same network" or "Everyone."

   To require a password to use AirPlay with the Mac, select the option, then enter a password in the text field.

If you choose the option "Anyone on the same network" or "Everyone," and someone is signed in to their device with a different Apple ID than on the Mac, an AirPlay request initially requires acceptance on the Mac and verification on the other device. On the Mac, accept the AirPlay request. If the Mac displays an AirPlay code, enter the code on the other device.

Play video from your iPhone on a Mac

1. While playing video in the Apple TV app ⧉ or another supported video app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the controls.

2. Tap 🖥, then choose the Mac as the playback destination.

Play the movie on a Mac.

To show video playback controls on the Mac, move the pointer over the video playing on the Mac screen.

To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPhone screen.

Show photos from your iPhone on a Mac

1. In Photos 🌸 on your iPhone, tap a photo, then tap ⬆.

2. Swipe up, tap 🖥, then choose the Mac as the playback destination.

To stop streaming photos, tap 🔲 near the top of the iPhone screen, then tap Turn off AirPlay.

Mirror your iPhone on a Mac

On a Mac, you can view and listen to whatever appears and plays on your iPhone.

1. Open Control Center on your iPhone.

2. Tap 🔲, then choose your Mac as the playback destination.

To switch back to iPhone, open Control Center, tap 🔲, then tap Stop Mirroring.

Play audio from iPhone on Mac

1. On your iPhone, open an audio app, such as Podcasts 🎙️ or Music 🎵, then choose an item to play.

2. Tap 🔘, then choose a playback destination.

Choose the playback destination.
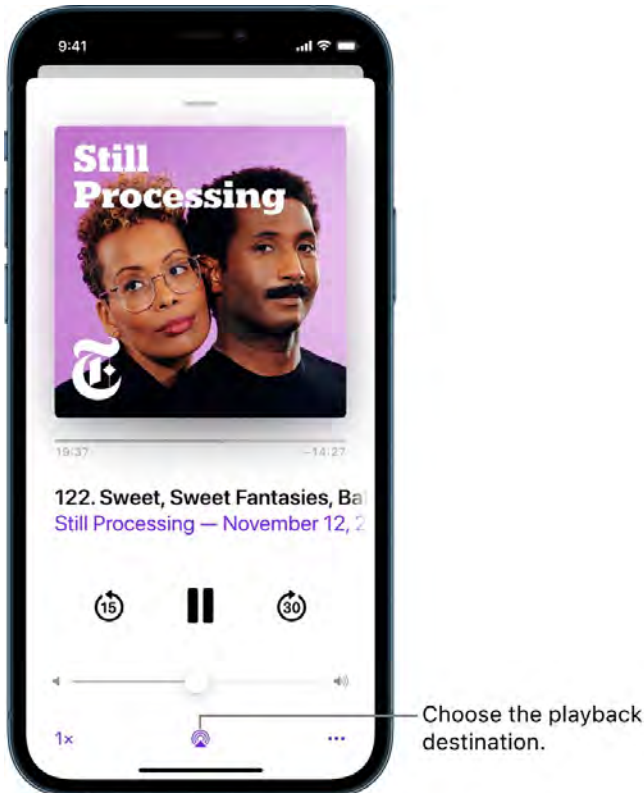
To select the playback destination, you can also tap 🔘 on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

Note: AirPlay to Mac is available on MacBook Pro (2018 and later), MacBook Air (2018 and later), iMac (2019 and later), iMac Pro (2017), Mac mini (2020 and later), and Mac Pro (2019) and works with iPhone 7 and later. Older models may share content at a lower resolution to supported Mac models when "Allow AirPlay for" is set to "Everyone" or "Anyone on the same network" in Sharing preferences on Mac.

Cut, copy, and paste between iPhone and other devices

You can use Universal Clipboard to cut or copy content (a block of text or an image, for example) on your iPhone, then paste it on iPad, on another iOS device, or on a Mac, and vice versa.

Note: For information about cutting, copying, and pasting text within or between apps only on your iPhone, see Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone.

Before you begin

To cut or copy and paste between iPhone and another device, make sure of the following:

- You're signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.

- Your devices are connected to Wi-Fi.

- Your devices are within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).

- On your iPhone and on another iOS or iPadOS device, Handoff is turned on in Settings 🔘 > General > AirPlay & Handoff, and Bluetooth is turned on in Settings 🔘.

- On Mac, Handoff is turned on in System Preferences > General, and Bluetooth is turned on in System Preferences > Bluetooth.

- Each device has the minimum relevant software version installed: iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, or later.

Copy, cut, or paste

- *Copy:* Pinch closed with three fingers.

- *Cut:* Pinch closed with three fingers two times.

- *Paste:* Pinch open with three fingers.

You can also touch and hold a selection, then tap Cut, Copy, or Paste.

Important: You need to cut, copy, and paste your content within a short period of time.

For more information about selecting text or placing the insertion point, see Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone.

Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable

Using a USB cable or adapter, you can directly connect iPhone and a Mac or Windows PC.

1. Make sure you have one of the following:

   - Mac with a USB port and OS X 10.9 or later

   - PC with a USB port and Windows 7 or later

2. Connect iPhone to your computer using the charging cable for your iPhone. If the cable isn't compatible with the port on your computer, do one of the following:

   - If your iPhone came with a Lightning to USB Cable and your computer has a USB-C port, connect the USB end of the cable to a USB-C to USB Adapter (sold separately), or use a USB-C to Lightning Cable (sold separately).

   - If your iPhone came with a USB-C to Lightning Cable and your computer has a USB port, use a Lightning to USB Cable (sold separately).

3. Do any of the following:

   - Set up iPhone for the first time.

   - Share your iPhone internet connection with your computer.

   - Transfer files between your iPhone and computer.

   - Sync content between your iPhone and computer.

   - Use your computer to erase all content and settings from iPhone.

   - Update iPhone using your computer.

The iPhone battery charges when iPhone is connected to your computer and your computer is connected to power.

Sync iPhone with your computer

You can use iCloud to automatically keep your photos, files, calendar, and more updated across all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID. (You can even use a Windows PC to access your iCloud data on iCloud.com.) Other services like Apple Music allow you to access additional content across all of your devices. With iCloud and services like Apple Music, no syncing is required.

If you don't want to use iCloud or other services, you can connect iPhone to your Mac or Windows PC to sync the following items:

- Albums, songs, playlists, movies, TV shows, podcasts, books, and audiobooks

- Photos and videos

- Contacts and calendars

With syncing, you can keep these items up to date between your computer and your iPhone.

Note: If you use iCloud or other services like Apple Music, options for syncing with your computer might not be available.

Set up syncing between your Mac and iPhone

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

2. In the Finder sidebar on your Mac, select your iPhone.

   Note: To use the Finder to sync content, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, use iTunes to sync with your Mac.

3. At the top of the window, click the type of content you want to sync (for example, Movies or Books).

   Note: For information about using the Files option, see Transfer files between iPhone and your computer.

4. Select "Sync [*content type*] onto [*device name*]."

   By default, all items of a content type are synced, but you can choose to sync individual items, such as selected music, movies, books, or calendars.

5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each type of content you want to sync, then click Apply.

Your Mac syncs to your iPhone whenever you connect them.

To view or change syncing options, select your iPhone in the Finder sidebar, then choose from the options at the top of the window.

Before disconnecting your iPhone from your Mac, click the Eject button in the Finder sidebar.

See Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad in the macOS User Guide.

Set up syncing between your Windows PC and iPhone

1. Install or update to the latest version of iTunes on your PC.

   See the Apple Support article Update to the latest version of iTunes.

2. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

3. In the iTunes app on your PC, click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window.

4. Select the type of content you want to sync (for example, Movies or Books) in the sidebar on the left.

   Note: For information about using the File Sharing option, see Transfer files between iPhone and your computer.

5. Select Sync to turn on syncing for that type of item.

   By default, all items of a content type are synced, but you can choose to sync individual items, such as selected music, movies, books, or calendars.

6. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each type of content you want to include on your iPhone, then click Apply.

By default, your Windows PC syncs to your iPhone whenever you connect them. You can have iTunes ask you before syncing, and if there are some items you never want sync, you can keep them from being synced. See Sync iTunes content on PC with your devices in the iTunes User Guide for Windows.

Turn on Wi-Fi syncing

After you set up syncing between your computer and iPhone, do the following:

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

2. Do one of the following:

    - *In the Finder sidebar on your Mac:* Select your iPhone, click General at the top of the window, then select "Show this [*device*] when on Wi-Fi."

      To use the Finder to turn on Wi-Fi syncing, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, use iTunes to turn on Wi-Fi syncing.

    - *In the iTunes app on a Windows PC:* Click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then select "Sync with this [*device*] over Wi-Fi" (in Options).

3. Click Apply.

By default, whenever iPhone is plugged into power and is connected over Wi-Fi to your Mac or to iTunes on your Windows PC, the computer syncs your selected content to iPhone.

See Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad over Wi-Fi in the macOS User Guide or Sync iTunes content on PC with devices on Wi-Fi in the iTunes User Guide for Windows.

WARNING: If you delete a synced item from your computer, the item is also deleted from your iPhone the next time you sync.

Transfer files between iPhone and your computer

You can use iCloud Drive to keep your files up to date and accessible on all your devices, including Windows PCs. You can also transfer files between iPhone and other devices by using AirDrop and sending email attachments.

Alternatively, you can transfer files for apps that support file sharing by connecting iPhone to a Mac (with a USB port and OS X 10.9 or later) or a Windows PC (with a USB port and Windows 7 or later).

Transfer files between iPhone and your Mac

1. Connect iPhone to your Mac.

   You can connect using USB, or if you set up Wi-Fi syncing, you can use a Wi-Fi connection.

2. In the Finder sidebar on your Mac, select your iPhone.

   Note: To use the Finder to transfer files, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, use iTunes to transfer files.

3. At the top of the Finder window, click Files, then do one of the following:

   - *Transfer from Mac to iPhone:* Drag a file or a selection of files from a Finder window onto an app name in the list.

   - *Transfer from iPhone to Mac:* Click the disclosure triangle beside an app name to see its files on your iPhone, then drag a file to a Finder window.

To delete a file from iPhone, select it below an app name, press Command-Delete, then click Delete.

Transfer files between iPhone and your Windows PC

1. Install or update to the latest version of iTunes on your PC.

   See the Apple Support article Update to the latest version of iTunes.

2. Connect iPhone to your Windows PC.

   You can connect using USB, or if you set up Wi-Fi syncing, you can use a Wi-Fi connection.

3. In iTunes on your Windows PC, click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window.

4. Click File Sharing, select an app in the list, then do one of the following:

   - *Transfer a file from your iPhone to your computer:* Select the file you want to transfer in the list on the right, click "Save to," select where you want to save the file, then click Save To.

   - *Transfer a file from your computer to your iPhone:* Click Add, select the file you want to transfer, then click Add.

To delete a file from iPhone, select the file, press the Delete key, then click Delete.

File transfers occur immediately. To view items transferred to iPhone, go to On My iPhone in the Files app 📁 on iPhone. See View and modify files and folders in Files on iPhone.

Important: Syncing has no effect on file transfers, so syncing doesn't keep transferred files on iPhone up to date with the files on your computer.

See Transfer files from your Mac to iPhone or iPad in the macOS User Guide or Transfer files between your PC and devices with iTunes in the iTunes User Guide for Windows.

CarPlay

Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

Connect your iPhone to CarPlay to get turn-by-turn directions, make phone calls, listen to music, check your calendar, and more—all from your vehicle's display.
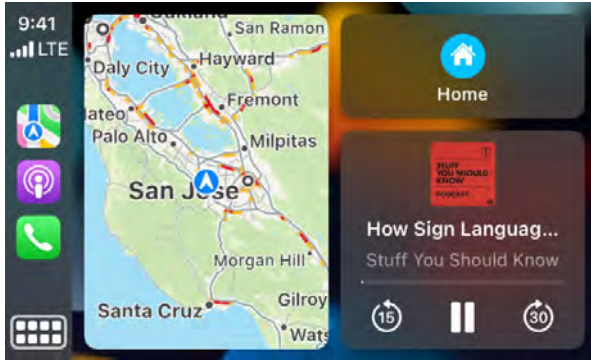
Note: CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website).

CarPlay is available on select automobiles (see the CarPlay Available Models website) and on select aftermarket navigation systems.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Connect iPhone to CarPlay

Set up CarPlay by connecting your iPhone and your vehicle using your vehicle's USB port or its wireless capability.

Ensure that Siri is enabled on iPhone

If Siri is not enabled on your iPhone, go to Settings 🔘 > Siri & Search, then turn on one of the following:

- Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID)

- Press Home for Siri (on other iPhone models)

Connect using USB

Connect iPhone to your vehicle's USB port using an Apple-approved Lightning to USB cable.

The USB port may be labeled with the CarPlay logo or an image of a smartphone.

Connect wirelessly

1. On a vehicle that supports wireless CarPlay, do one of the following (see your owner's guide for detailed instructions):

   - Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.

   - Make sure your vehicle is in wireless or Bluetooth pairing mode.

2. On your iPhone, go to Settings 🎛 > General > CarPlay > Available Cars.

3. Choose your vehicle.

Note: Some vehicles that support wireless CarPlay allow you to pair simply by plugging iPhone into your vehicle's USB port using a Lightning to USB cable. If supported, after you start CarPlay using USB, you're asked if you want to pair wireless CarPlay for future use. If you agree, the next time you go for a drive, iPhone connects wirelessly to CarPlay automatically.

Note: After connecting to CarPlay on some electric vehicles, use the Maps app to identify the vehicle for EV routing. See Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone.

On some vehicle models, CarPlay Home appears automatically when you connect iPhone.

If CarPlay Home doesn't appear, select the CarPlay logo on your vehicle's display.

Use Siri to Control CarPlay

CarPlay uses Siri voice control, so you can ask for what you want. (You can also use your car's built-in controls to control CarPlay.)

Ask Siri on CarPlay

1. Do one of the following until Siri beeps:

   - Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel.

   - Touch and hold the CarPlay Dashboard ▮▤ or CarPlay Home ⬛ button on a touchscreen displaying CarPlay.

2. Ask Siri a question or to do something.

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like:

- "Get directions to the nearest coffee shop"

- "Call Eliza Block"

- "Play more songs like this one"

- "Show me the map"

- "What's my next meeting?"

- "What's the weather for today?"

- "Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home"

💡 **Tip:** Instead of waiting for Siri to notice that you've stopped talking, you can press and continue to hold the voice command button on the steering wheel while you speak, then release it when you finish.

Siri also makes suggestions in CarPlay for what you might want to do next, such as operate the garage door when you arrive home or drive to your next meeting. See About Siri Suggestions.

Use your vehicle's built-in controls to control CarPlay

CarPlay works with your vehicle's built-in controls—for example, a touchscreen, a rotary knob, or a touchpad. To learn how to operate your display, see the owner's guide that came with your vehicle. (You can also use Siri to control CarPlay.)
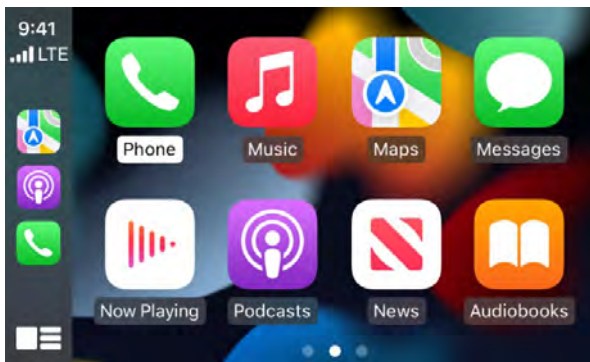
- *Open an app:* Tap the app on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select the app, then press the knob.

- *Switch between CarPlay Dashboard and CarPlay Home:* CarPlay Dashboard displays several items you likely want to view or control, such as driving directions, audio playback, and suggestions from Siri. CarPlay Home shows all your CarPlay apps organized into pages.

  To go to CarPlay Home, tap ▦ on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select ▦, then press the knob.

  To go to CarPlay Dashboard, tap ◼≡, or turn the rotary knob to select ◼≡, then press the knob.

- *Return to your vehicle's Home Screen:* Select the icon with your vehicle's logo if it appears on CarPlay Home or, if available, the physical Home button on your radio.

- *Return to a recently used app:* Tap its icon on the edge of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to the icon, then press the knob.

- *View additional apps:* If you have more than eight apps, some may appear on another page of CarPlay Home. To view them, swipe left on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob. (See Use other apps with CarPlay.)

- *Scroll quickly through a list:* Tap the letters in the list on the right side of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob.

- *Control audio playback:* Use the audio playback controls on CarPlay Dashboard. Or from CarPlay Home, select Now Playing to view and control the current audio app.

Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Maps to get turn-by-turn directions, traffic conditions, and estimated travel time (not available in all regions).

Note: To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Location Services must be on. (See Control the location information you share on iPhone.)
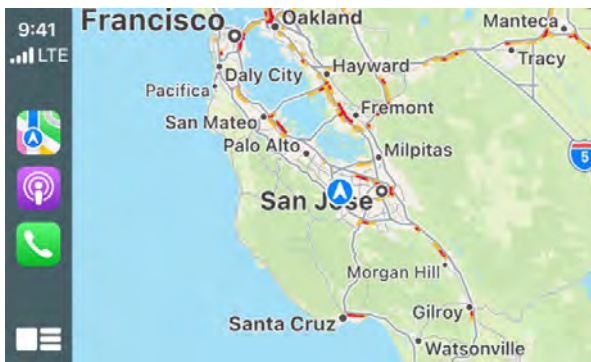
Find a route

CarPlay generates likely destinations using addresses from your email, text messages, contacts, and calendars—as well as places you frequent. You can also search for a location, use locations you saved as favorites and in collections, and find nearby attractions and services.

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like:

- "Find a gas station"

- "Give me directions home"

- "Take me to the Golden Gate Bridge"

- "Find a charging station"

- "Find coffee near me"

Learn how to ask Siri

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Maps in CarPlay and select a route.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Maps doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ▦ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Maps.

1. With Maps open in CarPlay, do one of the following:

   - Select a place you saved as a favorite. (See Save favorite places in Maps on iPhone.)

   - Select Destinations, then select a recent destination or scroll to select a destination you saved in a collection. (See Organize places in My Guides in Maps on iPhone.)

   - Select Search, then select 🎙 to speak a search phrase, or select ⌨ to use the onscreen keyboard (if available). You can also select a destination from a category of nearby services, such as Parking or Restaurants.

2. If multiple routes appear, use your vehicle's controls to select the route you prefer.

3. To call your destination before you leave, select 📞.

4. To start turn-by-turn directions, select Go.

Maps shows directions from your current location.

When you arrive at your destination and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker appears in Maps on iPhone so you can easily find your way back to your vehicle.

Follow turn-by-turn directions

As CarPlay follows your progress, it speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

Do any of the following at any time during your trip:

- *End directions at any time:* Say something to Siri like "Stop navigating," or select the estimated time of arrival (ETA) display at the bottom left, then choose End Route.

- *Mute turn-by-turn directions:* Tap 🔊), then choose 🔇 to mute all directions.

- *Mute turn-by-turn directions, except for alerts and hazards:* Tap 🔊), then choose 🔊⚠.

- *Make a quick detour:* Say something to Siri like "Find a gas station." Or select the ETA display, select Search, select a suggested service, then choose a destination.

- *Share your ETA:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Share ETA, then choose one or more suggested contacts.

  People using devices with iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using devices with earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message. (Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.)

  To stop sending ETA information, select Sharing ETA at the bottom of the CarPlay screen, then choose a contact.

Note: For navigation apps that support the CarPlay Dashboard, Dashboard shows the last navigation app opened if no apps are navigating, the one that is actively navigating, or the last opened and actively navigating app if multiple apps are navigating.

Report traffic incidents in CarPlay

In select regions and countries, you can report accidents, hazards, speed checks, and road work (features vary by region and country).

Report an incident

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like:

- "Report an accident"

- "There's something on the road"

- "There's a speed check here"

[Learn how to ask Siri](#)

Or with turn-by-turn directions showing, you can select 🔲, then choose from one of the available options.
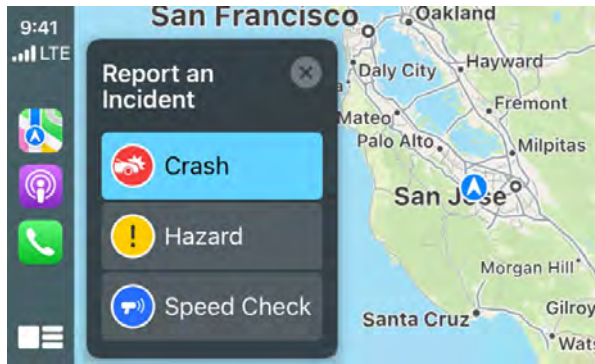
Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in the reports, incident markers for Accident, Hazard, and Road Work are displayed in Maps for other users.

Note: Speed checks are not displayed with incident markers. Instead, notifications for speed checks appear when you follow turn-by-turn directions.

Report on the status of a hazard or accident

Incident markers show information about hazards ⚠️ and accidents 🔶. When you're near their locations, you can report their status.

🎙️ **Siri:** Say something like "The hazard is gone" or "Clear the accident." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or, you can do the following:

1. Select the incident marker.

2. Select Cleared or Still Here.

   Note: You can't clear reports of speed checks.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in reports that an incident has been cleared, its incident marker is removed from Maps.

Note: Apple is committed to keeping personal information safe and private. To learn more, go to Settings ⚙️ > Maps, then tap About Apple Maps and Privacy.

Change the map view in CarPlay

Find your location on a map, zoom in and out, and move the map to see the detail you need.
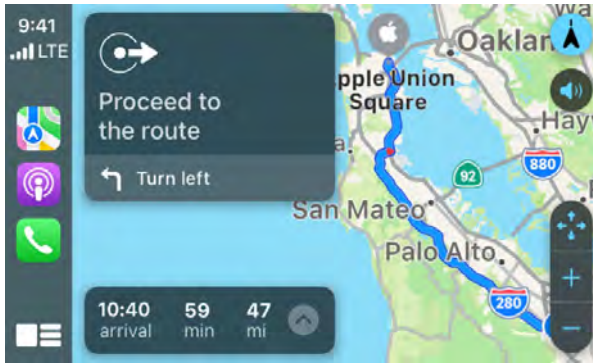
When you follow turn-by-turn directions, you can tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Switch between detailed and high-level views:* To see a detailed 3D map with your heading at the top of the screen, select ⋀. To see the route overview in 2D with north at the top of the screen, select ⤴.

- *Zoom in or out:* Select ➕ or ➖.

- *Scroll the map:* Select ✥, then select a direction arrow on one of the edges of the screen. To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap Resume.

  On some touchscreens, you can also drag the map to scroll it.

You can also change the map view when not following directions. Tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Show your current location:* Tap ◹. Your position is marked in the middle of the map.

- *View a 3D map:* Tap 3D. To return to a 2D map, tap 2D.

- *Show your heading at the top of the screen:* Tap ◹. To resume showing north at the top, tap ⋀

- *Zoom in or out:* Select ➕ or ➖.

- *Scroll the map:* Select ✥, then select a direction arrow at the edges of the screen. When finished, tap Done.

Make and receive phone calls with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to make phone calls and listen to voicemail from your iPhone.

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like: "Call Eliza." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to help make a call.

Open Phone in CarPlay, then select an option.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Phone doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ▦ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Phone.

Play music with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Music in CarPlay to play music that's available on your iPhone—including songs, artists, albums, playlists, and Radio.

🎤 **Siri:** Say something like:

- "Let's hear the Acoustic playlist"

- "Play 'You Need to Calm Down' by Taylor Swift"

- "Play more songs like this one"

- "Play the rest of this album"

- "Skip this song"

- "Repeat this song"

- "Shuffle this playlist"

- "Tune into ESPN Radio"

Learn how to ask Siri

If Siri doesn't find what you asked for, be more specific. For example, say "Play the radio station 'Pure Pop'" rather than saying "Play 'Pure Pop.'"
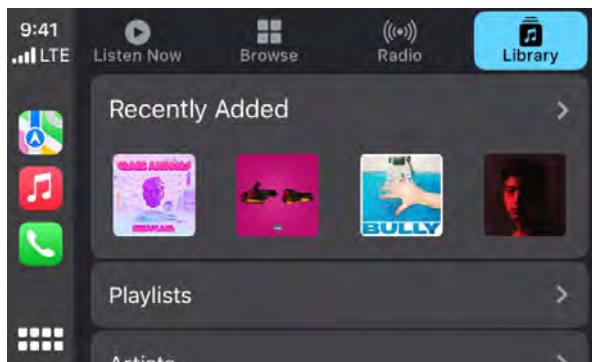
You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control music playback.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ▦ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Music.

Button	Description
⏸	Pause playback.
▶	Play the current song.
⏩	Skip to the next song. When pressed and held, fast forward through the current song.
⏪	Return to the song's beginning. When pressed again, return to the previous song. When pressed and held, rewind through the current song.
🔀	Play songs in random order.
🔁	Continually repeat the current song.
•••	Display controls to create a custom station based on the current song and to rate the current song.
Up Next	Display a list of songs queued for playback. (You can select a song from the list to skip the songs that proceed it.)

On some systems, Now Playing displays only a partial list of choices while you're driving. To choose among options not in the list, select More at the bottom of the screen, or use Siri by pressing and holding the voice command button on your steering wheel.

Use Calendar with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Calendar in CarPlay to show and schedule events, appointments, and meetings.

🎤 **Siri:** Say something like: "Do I have a meeting at 10?" or "Where is my 3:30 meeting?" Learn how to ask Siri.

Upcoming events appear in CarPlay Dashboard. You can also use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Calendar in CarPlay to view upcoming events.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ⚏ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Calendar.

To see more information about an event, select it. Options may allow you to get directions to the event or phone into it.
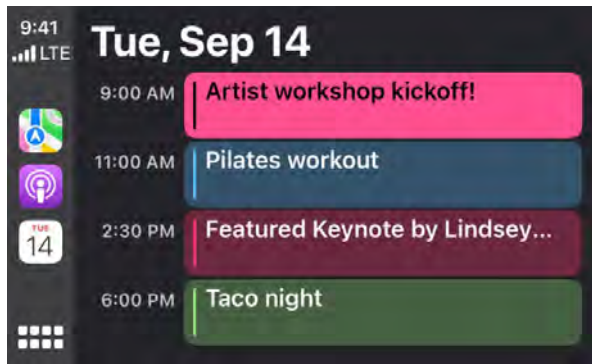
Send and receive text messages with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to send, hear, and reply to text messages from your iPhone.

🎤 **Siri:** Say something like:

- "Text my wife"

- "Text Eliza Block I'm in traffic and I'll be 15 minutes late to the meeting"

- "Read my text messages"

[Learn how to ask Siri](#)
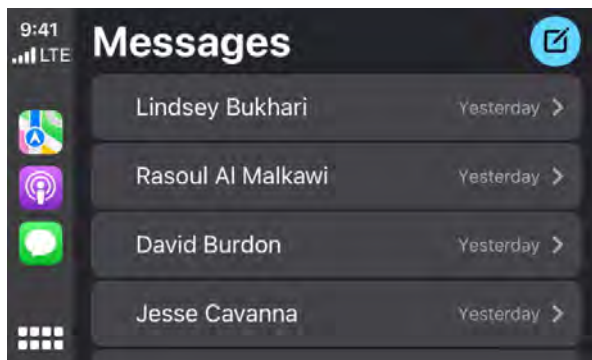
Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to help send and receive messages. Open Messages in CarPlay, then do one of the following:

- *Hear unread messages or respond to a thread:* Select a conversation.

- *Start a new conversation:* Select ☑.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Messages doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ⊞ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Messages.

Announce incoming text messages with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to have Siri automatically read your incoming text messages and listen for your response.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ > Siri & Search > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.

2. Tap CarPlay, then choose any of the following:

   - *Announce New Messages:* CarPlay starts your drive with Announce Messages active and reads your incoming text messages aloud.

   - *Silence New Messages:* CarPlay starts your drive with Announce Messages silenced and doesn't read incoming text messages automatically.

   - *Remember Previous Setting:* CarPlay remembers whether Announce Messages were active or silenced from the previous drive.

Note: You can also enable or disable Announce Messages directly in CarPlay by tapping Announce when Siri reads an incoming text message.

See Have Siri announce notifications.
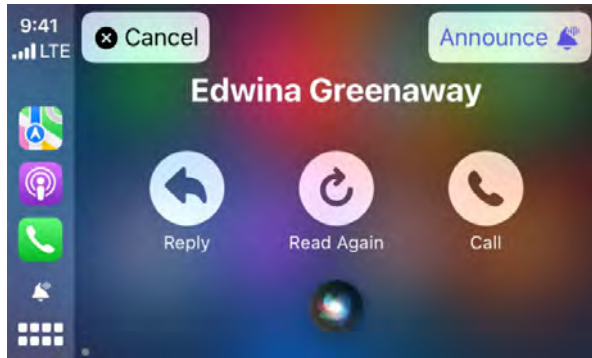
Play podcasts with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the podcasts that are on your iPhone.

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like: "Play 'The Daily' podcast" or "Rewind 15 seconds." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or you can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open Podcasts and select a podcast to play.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ⚏ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Podcasts.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control podcast playback.

Button	Description
▶	Play
⏸	Pause
↺15	Jump back 15 seconds
↻30	Jump forward 30 seconds
1×	Choose a faster or slower playback speed

Play audiobooks with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the audiobooks that are on your iPhone.

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like: "Play Pride and Prejudice audiobook" or "Rewind 15 seconds." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or you can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open Audiobooks and select a book to play. You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control audiobook playback.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ⚏ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Audiobooks.

Listen to news stories with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to listen to Apple News Today audio briefings and, if you're an Apple News+ subscriber, audio versions of select news stories. (If you aren't a subscriber, you can listen to story previews.)

You can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open News and select a story to play.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and News doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ▦ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including News.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control playback.

Button	Description
⏸	Pause playback.
▶	Play the current story.
⏩	Skip to the next story.
⟲15	Jump back 15 seconds.
1✕	Choose a faster or slower playback speed.

Note: CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website).

Control your home from CarPlay

You can use suggestions from Siri that appear on CarPlay Dashboard or ask Siri directly to control HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as garage doors, lights, and door locks.

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like:

- "Open the garage door"

- "Did I leave the garage door open?"

- "Close the garage door"

- "Lock the front door"

- "Turn on the lights"

- "Turn off the lights"

Learn how to ask Siri

Use other apps with CarPlay

You can use Siri with CarPlay to access many of the apps on iPhone, including Reminders, Clock, Weather, and more.

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like:

- "Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home"

- "Add milk to my grocery list"

- "Set my alarm for 6:00 a.m. tomorrow"

- "What's the weather for today?"

Learn how to ask Siri

CarPlay works with select third-party apps that you download to your iPhone. Compatible apps—including audio, navigation, messaging, and voice-calling apps, and apps made by your vehicle manufacturer—show up automatically on CarPlay Home and can be controlled with Siri. For example, you can ask Siri to give you directions from your favorite navigation app. CarPlay also works with additional third-party apps for EV charging, parking, and quick food ordering.

Note: Compatible third-party navigation apps appear on CarPlay Dashboard while in use. When you're not actively navigating, or if you're navigating using more than one app, CarPlay Dashboard displays the last compatible navigation app that was used.

Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home

1. When you're not operating your vehicle, open Settings on your iPhone, go to General > CarPlay, select your vehicle, then tap Customize.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Move an icon:* Drag ☰ up or down in the list.

   - *Remove an icon:* Tap 🔴 next to the icon, then tap Remove.

     Only icons that have 🔴 next to them can be removed.

   - *Add an icon back to CarPlay:* Below More Apps at the bottom of the page, tap 🟢 next to the icon.

Your icon changes appear on CarPlay Home the next time you connect to CarPlay.

Change settings in CarPlay

In Settings in CarPlay, you can change the Wallpaper, turn on Driving Focus, change how CarPlay looks on the display, turn suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard on or off, and show or hide album art.

Use the Driving Focus with CarPlay

The Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. While your iPhone is connected to CarPlay and Driving Focus is on, notifications and text messages are silenced or limited.

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.

   Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Settings doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ⚏ to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Settings.

2. Go to Driving Focus, then select Activate With CarPlay.

If you receive a Driving Focus notification when you're not driving (for example, when you're a passenger) you can turn it off—tap the notification, then tap "I'm not driving."

Switch the appearance of CarPlay

CarPlay is set to dark appearance by default in most vehicles. If you prefer to have CarPlay automatically switch between dark and light appearance, do the following:

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.

2. Select Appearance.

3. Select Always Dark.

The dark appearance is optimized for viewing in low-light environments, such as at night.

Change the wallpaper in CarPlay

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, select Wallpaper, then choose one of the available options.

Hide or show suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Suggestions in CarPlay off or on.

Hide or show album art

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Show Album Art off or on.

Accessibility

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

iPhone provides many accessibility features to support your vision, physical and motor, hearing, and learning needs. Learn how to configure these features and set up shortcuts for easy access.

Turn on accessibility features during setup

You can turn on many accessibility features right away when you first set up iPhone. Turn on iPhone, then do any of the following:

- *Turn on VoiceOver:* Triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models).

- *Turn on Zoom:* Double-tap the screen with three fingers.

- *Turn on Switch Control, Larger Text, Smart Invert, and more:* Choose a language and country, tap 🛈, then choose the features you want.

If you're moving from a previous iPhone, you can also transfer your accessibility settings. See Turn on and set up iPhone.

Change accessibility settings

After you set up iPhone, you can adjust accessibility settings.

1. Go to Settings 🖥 > Accessibility.

2. Choose any of the following features:

   - Vision

     - VoiceOver

     - Zoom

     - Display and text size

     - Motion

     - Spoken content

     - Audio descriptions

Draft

- Physical and motor

  - AssistiveTouch

  - Touch accommodations

  - Back tap

  - Reachability

  - Call audio routing

  - Vibration

  - Face ID and attention

  - Switch Control

  - Voice Control

  - Side or Home button

  - Apple TV remote

  - Pointer control

  - Keyboards

  - AirPods

- Hearing

  - Hearing devices

  - Live Listen

  - Sound recognition

  - RTT/TTY

  - Mono audio, balance, and phone noise cancellation

  - LED flash for alerts

  - Headphone accommodations

  - Background sounds

  - Subtitles and captions

  - Transcriptions for Intercom messages from HomePod

- General

  -

VoiceOver

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

With VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—you can use iPhone even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver gives audible descriptions of what's on your screen—from battery level, to who's calling, to which app your finger is on. You can also adjust the speaking rate and pitch to suit your needs.

When you touch the screen or drag your finger over it, VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. To interact with the item, such as a button or link, or to navigate to another item, use VoiceOver gestures.

When you go to a new screen, VoiceOver plays a sound, then selects and speaks the name of the first item on the screen (typically in the top-left corner). VoiceOver tells you when the display changes to landscape or portrait orientation, when the screen becomes dimmed or locked, and what's active on the Lock Screen when you wake iPhone.

Turn VoiceOver on or off

Important: VoiceOver changes the gestures you use to control iPhone. When VoiceOver is on, you must use VoiceOver gestures to operate iPhone.

To turn VoiceOver on or off, use any of the following methods:

- Activate Siri and say "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver."

- Triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID).

- Triple-click the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

- Use Control Center.

- Go to Settings 🖲 > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn the setting on or off.

Learn and practice VoiceOver gestures

You can practice VoiceOver gestures in a special area without affecting iPhone or its settings. When you practice a gesture, VoiceOver describes the gesture and the resulting action.

Try different techniques to discover which works best for you. If a gesture doesn't work, try a quicker movement, especially for a double-tap or swipe gesture. To swipe, try brushing the screen quickly with your finger or fingers. For best results using multifinger gestures, touch the screen with some space between your fingers.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver.

2. Turn on VoiceOver, tap VoiceOver Practice, then double-tap to start.

3. Practice the following gestures with one, two, three, and four fingers:

    -   Tap

    -   Double-tap

    -   Triple tap

    -   Swipe left, right, up, or down

4. When you finish practicing, tap Done, then double-tap to exit.

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone

You can customize the settings for VoiceOver, such as the audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

Adjust the VoiceOver volume and other audio options

-   To increase or decrease the volume, press the volume buttons on iPhone.

-   To set other audio options, go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, then set options such as the following:

    -   *Sounds & Haptics:* Adjust and preview sound effects and haptics.

    -   *Audio Ducking:* Temporarily reduce media playback volume when VoiceOver speaks.

    -   *Auto-select Speaker in Call:* Automatically switch to the speaker during a call when you're not holding iPhone to your ear.

    -   *Send to HDMI:* Route audio to externally connected devices, such as an instrument amplifier or a DJ mixer.

Set the VoiceOver language

VoiceOver uses the same language you choose for your iPhone. VoiceOver pronunciation of some languages is affected by the Region Format you choose.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > General > Language & Region.

2. Tap iPhone Language, then choose a language.

Adjust the speaking voice

Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then do any of the following:

- *Adjust the speaking rate:* Drag the Speaking Rate slider.

- *Choose a voice:* Tap Speech > Voice, then choose a voice. To download an enhanced voice, tap ☁.

- *Adjust the pitch:* Tap Speech, then drag the slider. You can also turn on Use Pitch Change to have VoiceOver use a higher pitch when speaking the first item of a group (such as a list or table) and a lower pitch when speaking the last item of a group.

- *Specify the pronunciation of certain words:* Tap Speech > Pronunciations, tap ＋, enter a phrase, then dictate or spell out how you want the phrase to be pronounced.

  Note: You can dictate only if you turned on Enable Dictation in Settings > General > Keyboards.

Set how much VoiceOver tells you

Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then tap any of the following:

- *Verbosity:* Choose options to have VoiceOver speak hints, punctuation, uppercase letters, embedded links, and more. VoiceOver can even confirm rotor actions and tell you when the flashlight is turned on.

  To change how VoiceOver speaks punctuation, tap Punctuation, then choose a group. You can also create new groups—for example, a programming group in which "[" is spoken as "left brack."

- *Always Speak Notifications:* VoiceOver reads notifications, including incoming text messages as they occur, even if iPhone is locked. Unacknowledged notifications are repeated when you unlock iPhone.

Customize VoiceOver settings for an activity

You can customize a group of VoiceOver settings for an activity such as programming. Apply the settings automatically when you open certain apps or by adjusting the rotor.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Activities.

2. Choose an existing activity or tap Add Activity.

3. Adjust settings for speech, audio, verbosity, and braille.

4. Choose Apps or Context to automatically apply the settings for this activity.

Use flat or grouped navigation

Go to Settings 🖲 > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigation Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Flat:* VoiceOver moves sequentially through each item on the screen when you use the move next and previous commands.

- *Grouped:* VoiceOver moves through items and groups of items on the screen. To move into a group, use a two-finger swipe right. To move out of a group, use a two-finger swipe left.

Adjust VoiceOver visuals

Go to Settings 🖲 > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn on any of the following:

- *Large Cursor:* If you have difficulty seeing the black outline around the selected item, you can enlarge and thicken the outline.

- *Caption Panel:* The text spoken by VoiceOver is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Use Quick Settings to adjust VoiceOver from anywhere on iPhone

When VoiceOver is turned on, you can access Quick Settings by doing a two-finger quadruple tap.

To customize Quick Settings, do the following:

1. Go to Settings 🖲 > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Quick Settings.

2. Choose the settings you want, or drag ≡ to reorder settings.

Learn VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

When VoiceOver is on, standard touchscreen gestures have different effects, and additional gestures let you move around the screen and control individual items. VoiceOver gestures include two-, three-, and four-finger taps and swipes.

You can use different techniques to perform VoiceOver gestures. For example, you can perform a two-finger tap using two fingers on one hand, one finger on each hand, or your thumbs. Instead of selecting an item and double-tapping, you can use a split-tap gesture—touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another finger.

Explore and speak items on the screen

To explore the screen, drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of each item you touch.

You can also use VoiceOver gestures to explore the screen in order, from top to bottom and left to right.

Action	Gesture
Select and speak an item	Tap or touch the item
Select the next item	Swipe right
Select the previous item	Swipe left
Move into a group of items	Two-finger swipe right
Move out of a group of items	Two-finger swipe left
Select the first item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the top of the screen
Select the last item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the bottom of the screen
Speak the entire screen from the top	Two-finger swipe up
Speak the entire screen from the selected item	Two-finger swipe down
Pause or continue speaking	Two-finger tap
Speak additional information, such as the position within a list or whether text is selected	Three-finger tap

For more information about navigation styles, see Use flat or grouped navigation.

Scroll up, down, left, and right

Use VoiceOver gestures to move to another page.

Action	Gesture
Scroll up one page	Three-finger swipe down
Scroll down one page	Three-finger swipe up
Scroll left one page	Three-finger swipe right
Scroll right one page	Three-finger swipe left

Take action on an item

Use VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item.

Action	Gesture
Select an item	Tap
Activate the selected item	Double-tap
Double-tap the selected item	Triple-tap
Drag a slider	Tap the slider to select it, then swipe up or down with one finger; or double-tap and hold the slider until you hear three rising tones, then drag the slider
Start or stop the current action (for example, play or pause music or a video, take a photo in Camera, start or stop a recording, start or stop the stopwatch)	Two-finger double-tap
Dismiss an alert or return to the previous screen	Two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z")
Edit an item's label to make it easier to find	Two-finger double-tap and hold

💡 **Tip:** As an alternative to selecting an item and double-tapping to activate it, touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another.

Use gestures to control VoiceOver

Use these gestures to control VoiceOver.

Action	Gesture
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	Three-finger double tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are enabled, use the three-finger triple-tap gesture.
Turn the screen curtain on or off (When the screen curtain is on, the screen contents are active even though the display is turned off.)	Three-finger triple tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are enabled, use the three-finger quadruple-tap gesture.

Use a standard gesture	Double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones, then make the gesture. When you lift your finger, VoiceOver gestures resume. For example, to drag a volume slider with your finger instead of swiping up and down, select the slider, double-tap and hold, wait for the three tones, then slide left or right.
Open the Item Chooser	Two-finger triple tap. To move quickly through the list of items, type a name in the search field, swipe right or left to move through the list alphabetically, or tap the table index to the right of the list and swipe up or down. You can also use handwriting to select an item by writing its name. To dismiss the Item Chooser without making a selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").
Open the VoiceOver quick settings	Two-finger quadruple tap.

Use the VoiceOver rotor

You can use the rotor to change VoiceOver settings, jump from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more. For details, see Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone.

Use these gestures to use the rotor.

Action	Gesture
Choose a rotor setting	Two-finger rotation
Move to the previous item or increase (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe up
Move to the next item or decrease (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe down

Operate iPhone using VoiceOver gestures

When VoiceOver is on, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPhone, go to the Home Screen, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

Unlock iPhone

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Wake iPhone and glance at it, then drag up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones.

- *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.

If prompted, enter your passcode. To avoid having your passcode spoken as you enter it, enter your passcode silently using handwriting mode or type onscreen braille.

Go to the Home Screen

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones, then lift your finger.

- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press the Home button.

Switch to another app

Swipe right or left with four fingers to cycle through the open apps.

Alternatively, you can use the App Switcher:

1. Open the App Switcher using one of the following methods:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear three tones, then lift your finger.

   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button.

2. To browse the open apps, swipe left or right until the app you want is selected.

3. Double-tap to open the app.

Open Control Center

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear the second tone.

- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe up with three fingers. Or touch and hold the bottom of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe up.

To dismiss Control Center, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

View notifications

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear the third tone.

  To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe down with three fingers. Or touch and hold the top of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe down.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

Speak status bar information

1. Tap the status bar at the top of the screen.

2. Swipe left or right to hear the time, battery state, Wi-Fi signal strength, and more.

Rearrange apps on your Home Screen

Use one of the following methods:

- *Drag and drop:* Tap an icon on the Home Screen, then double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones. The item's relative location is described as you drag. Lift your finger when the icon is in its new location. Drag an icon to the edge of the screen to move it to another Home Screen.

- *Move actions:* Tap an app, then swipe down to hear available actions. When you hear "Edit Mode," double-tap to start arranging apps. Find the app you want to move, then swipe down to the Move action and double-tap. Move the VoiceOver cursor to the new destination for the app, then choose from the available actions: Cancel Move, Create New Folder, Add to Folder, Move Before, or Move After.

When you're finished, tap Done, then double-tap.

Search from the Home Screen

1. Tap anywhere on the Home Screen outside the status bar.

2. Swipe down with three fingers.

Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

You can use the VoiceOver rotor to change how VoiceOver works. You can adjust the VoiceOver volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more.
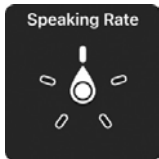
When you use Magic Keyboard to control VoiceOver, use the rotor to adjust settings such as volume, speech rate, use of pitch or phonetics, typing echo, and reading of punctuation.

Use the VoiceOver rotor

1. When VoiceOver is turned on, rotate two fingers on your screen as if you're turning a dial. If you prefer to use one finger on each hand, simultaneously drag up with one finger and drag down with the other.

   VoiceOver speaks the rotor setting. Keep rotating your fingers to hear more settings. Stop rotating your fingers when you hear the setting you want.

2. Swipe your finger up or down on the screen to use the setting.

   The available rotor settings and their effects depend on what you're doing. For example, if you choose Headings when you're browsing a webpage, swipe down or up to move the VoiceOver cursor to the next or previous heading.

Customize the VoiceOver rotor

1. Go to Settings 🖲 > Accessibility > VoiceOver.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Add or reorder the rotor settings:* Tap Rotor, then choose the settings you want, or drag ≡ to reorder settings.

   - *Add another language:* Tap Speech > Add New Language (below Rotor Languages), then choose a language.

   - *Have VoiceOver confirm rotor actions:* Tap Verbosity, then turn on Speak Confirmation.

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

VoiceOver changes how you use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. You can enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

Enter text with the onscreen keyboard

1. Select a text field, then double-tap.

   The insertion point and the onscreen keyboard appear.

2. Enter text using one of the following methods:

   - *Standard typing (default):* Select a key on the keyboard by swiping left or right, then double-tap to enter the character. Or move your finger around the keyboard to select a key and, while continuing to touch the key with one finger, tap the screen with another finger. VoiceOver speaks the key when it's selected, and again when the character is entered.

   - *Touch typing:* Touch a key on the keyboard to select it, then lift your finger to enter the character. If you touch the wrong key, slide your finger to the key you want. VoiceOver speaks the character for each key as you touch it, but doesn't enter a character until you lift your finger.

   - *Direct Touch typing:* VoiceOver is disabled for the keyboard only, so you can type just as you do when VoiceOver is off.

   - *Dictation:* Use a two-finger double tap on the keyboard to start and stop dictation.

To enter an accented character, use one of the following methods:

- *Standard typing (default):* Select the plain character, then double-tap and hold until you hear a tone indicating alternate characters have appeared. Drag left or right to select and hear the choices. Release your finger to enter the current selection.

- *Touch typing:* Touch and hold a character until the alternate characters appear.

Edit text with the onscreen keyboard

- *Move the insertion point:* Swipe up or down to move the insertion point forward or backward in the text. Use the rotor to choose whether you want to move the insertion point by character, by word, or by line. To jump to the beginning or end, double-tap the text.

  VoiceOver makes a sound when the insertion point moves, and speaks the character, word, or line that the insertion point moves across. When moving forward by words, the insertion point is placed at the end of each word, before the space or punctuation that follows. When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the end of the preceding word, before the space or punctuation that follows it.

- *Move the insertion point past the punctuation at the end of a word or sentence:* Use the rotor to switch back to character mode.

  When moving the insertion point by line, VoiceOver speaks each line as you move across it. When moving forward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the next line (except when you reach the last line of a paragraph, when the insertion point is moved to the end of the line just spoken). When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the line that's spoken.

- *Delete a character:* Use ⌫.

- *Select text:* Use one of the following methods.

  - Set the rotor to Text Selection, swipe up or down to choose Character, Word, Line, or Sentence, then swipe left or right to move backward or forward. (You may need to enable Text Selection—go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor.)

  - Set the rotor to Edit, swipe up or down to choose Select or Select All, then double-tap. If you choose Select, the word closest to the insertion point is selected when you double-tap. To increase or decrease the selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z") to dismiss the pop-up menu, then pinch.

- *Cut, copy, or paste:* Set the rotor to Edit, select the text, swipe up or down to choose Cut, Copy, or Paste, then double-tap.

- *Fix misspelled words:* Set the rotor to Misspelled Words, then swipe up or down to jump to the previous or next misspelled word. Swipe left or right to choose a suggested replacement, then double-tap to use the replacement.

- *Undo:* Shake iPhone, swipe left or right to choose the action to undo, then double-tap.

Change the keyboard settings

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver.

2. Tap any of the following:

   - *Typing Style:* You can choose a new style. Or, set the rotor to Typing Mode, then swipe up or down.

   - *Phonetic Feedback:* Speak text character by character. VoiceOver first speaks the character, then its phonetic equivalent—for example, "f" and then "foxtrot.

   - *Typing Feedback:* Choose to speak characters, words, both, or nothing.

   - *Rotor:* Select the settings you want to include in the rotor.

   - *Speech:* Tap Add New Language (below Rotor Languages), then choose a language.

   - *Verbosity:* Tap Deleting Text. To have VoiceOver speak deleted characters in a lower pitch, tap Change Pitch.

Write with your finger using VoiceOver on iPhone

With Handwriting mode, you can enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger. In addition to normal text entry, use handwriting mode to enter your iPhone passcode silently or to open apps from the Home Screen.

Use handwriting mode

1. Set the rotor to Handwriting.

   If Handwriting isn't in the rotor, go to Settings 🅸 > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then add it.

2. To choose a character type (lowercase, numbers, uppercase, or punctuation), swipe up or down with three fingers.

   To hear the selected character type, tap with three fingers.

3. Trace a character on the screen with your finger.

   You can also do any of the following:

   - *Enter an alternate character (a character with an accent, for example):* Write the character, then swipe up or down with two fingers until you hear the type of character you want.

   - *Enter a space:* Swipe right with two fingers.

   - *Go to a new line:* Swipe right with three fingers.

   - *Delete the previous character:* Swipe left with two fingers.

4. To exit handwriting mode, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or set the rotor to a different setting.

Enter your passcode silently with handwriting mode

1. On the passcode screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.

2. Write the characters of your passcode with your finger.

Select an item on the Home Screen

1. On the Home Screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.

2. Start writing the name of the item with your finger.

   If there are multiple matches, continue to spell the name until it's unique, or swipe up or down with two fingers to choose from the current matches.

Quickly navigate a long list

1. Select the index to the right of the list (for example, next to your Contacts list or in the VoiceOver Item Chooser).

2. Set the rotor to Handwriting, then use your finger to write the letter you want to navigate to.

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

If you use Magic Keyboard with iPhone, you can use keyboard shortcuts to activate VoiceOver commands.

Additionally, you can use VoiceOver Help to learn the keyboard layout and the actions associated with various key combinations. VoiceOver Help speaks keys and keyboard commands as you type them, without performing the associated action.

Choose the VoiceOver modifier

The modifier is a key or set of keys you press with one or more other keys to enter VoiceOver commands. You can set the modifier to be the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys pressed at the same time.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Typing > Modifier Keys.

2. Choose the modifier for VoiceOver commands: the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys.

   This modifier is abbreviated as "VO" in the tables below.

VoiceOver keyboard commands

VO = modifier keys

Action	Shortcut
Turn on VoiceOver Help	VO-K
Turn off VoiceOver Help	Esc (Escape)
Select the next or previous item	VO-Right Arrow or VO-Left Arrow
Activate the selected item	VO-Space bar
Touch and hold the selected item	VO-Shift-M
Read from the current position	VO-A
Read from the top	VO-B
Pause or resume reading	Control
Copy the last spoken text to the clipboard	VO-Shift-C
Search for text	VO-F
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	VO-S
Go to the Home Screen	VO-H

Draft

Move to the status bar	VO-M
Open the notifications screen	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Down Arrow
Open Search	Option-Up Arrow
Open the App Switcher	VO-H-H
Open the Item Chooser	VO-I
Change the label of the selected item	VO-/
Start, stop, or pause an action	VO-Hyphen
Swipe up or down	VO-Up Arrow or VO-Down Arrow
Adjust the rotor	VO-Command-Left Arrow or VO-Command-Right Arrow
Adjust the setting specified by the rotor	VO-Command-Up Arrow or VO-Command-Down Arrow
Turn the screen curtain on or off	VO-Shift-F11
Return to the previous screen	Esc

Quick Nav using the arrow keys

Turn on Quick Nav to control VoiceOver using the arrow keys.

Action	Shortcut
Turn Quick Nav on or off	Left Arrow-Right Arrow
Select the next or previous item	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Select the next or previous item specified by the rotor	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Select the first or last item	Control-Up Arrow or Control-Down Arrow
Tap an item	Up Arrow-Down Arrow
Scroll up, down, left, or right	Option-Up Arrow, Option-Down Arrow, Option-Left Arrow, or Option-Right Arrow

Adjust the rotor	Up Arrow-Left Arrow or Up Arrow-Right Arrow

Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing

To navigate a webpage quickly, turn on Quick Nav (VO-Q), then press keys on the keyboard to navigate to specific item types, such as headings or links. To move to the previous item, hold the Shift key as you press a key for the item type.

Item type	Shortcut
Heading	H
Link	L
Text field	R
Button	B
Form control	C
Image	I
Table	T
Static text	S
ARIA landmark	W
List	X
Item of the same type	M
Level 1 heading	1
Level 2 heading	2
Level 3 heading	3
Level 4 heading	4
Level 5 heading	5
Level 6 heading	6

Text editing

Use these commands (with Quick Nav turned off) to work with text. VoiceOver reads the text as you move the insertion point.

Action	Shortcut
Go forward or back one character	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Go forward or back one word	Option-Right Arrow or Option-Left Arrow
Go up or down one line	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the line	Command-Left Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the previous or next paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the top or bottom of the text field	Command-Up Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Select text as you move	Shift + any of the insertion point movement commands above
Select all text	Command-A
Copy, cut, or paste the selected text	Command-C, Command-X, or Command-V
Undo or redo last change	Command-Z or Shift-Command-Z

Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone

iPhone supports many international braille tables and refreshable braille displays. You can connect a Bluetooth wireless braille display to read VoiceOver output, including contracted and uncontracted braille and equations using Nemeth Code. When you edit text, the braille display shows the text in context, and your edits are automatically converted between braille and printed text. You can also use a braille display with input keys to control your iPhone when VoiceOver is turned on.

For a list of supported braille displays, see the Apple Support article Braille displays supported by iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Connect a braille display and learn commands to control iPhone

1. Turn on the braille display.

2. On iPhone, go to Settings 🔘 > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then choose the display.

3. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille, then choose the display.

4. To see the braille commands for controlling iPhone, tap More Info, then tap Braille Commands.

See the Apple Support article Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Change the braille display settings

1. On iPhone, go to Settings 🔅 > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille.

2. Set any of the following:

Setting	Description
Output	Set the braille display output to uncontracted six-dot, uncontracted eight-dot, or contracted braille.
Input	Choose the input method for entering braille on the display—uncontracted six-dot, uncontracted eight-dot, or contracted braille. You can also turn on Automatic Translation.
Braille Screen Input	Choose the input method for entering braille using the screen. See Type braille directly on the iPhone screen using VoiceOver.
Braille Tables	Add tables to the Braille Table rotor.
Status Cells	Turn on the general and text status cells and choose their location.
Equations use Nemeth Code	Turn on Nemeth Code for mathematical equations.
Show On-screen Keyboard	Display the keyboard on the screen.
Turn Pages when Panning	Automatically turn pages when panning.
Word Wrap	Wrap words to the next line.
Braille Alert Messages	When turned on, your braille display shows an alert message for the specified duration.
Ignore Chord Duration	Adjust the amount of time required before subsequent key presses are recognized as braille chords.
Auto Advance Duration	Adjust this setting to your preferred reading speed.

Output closed captions in braille during media playback

1. On iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity.

2. Choose Braille or Speech and Braille.

Type braille directly on the iPhone screen using VoiceOver

If you turn on Braille Screen Input, you can use your fingers to enter six-dot or contracted braille directly on the iPhone screen, without a physical braille keyboard.

Enter braille on the screen

1. Set the rotor to Braille Screen Input.

   If you don't see Braille Screen Input in the rotor, go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then select it from the list.

2. Place iPhone in one of the following positions:

   - *Tabletop mode:* Lay iPhone flat in front of you.

   - *Screen away mode:* Hold iPhone with the screen facing away so your fingers curl back to tap the screen.

3. Enter braille characters by tapping the screen with one or more fingers at the same time.

   💡 **Tip:** To have iPhone read dots aloud, tap and hold the dots, then when you hear the timer tones and announcement, release the dots.

   To move the entry dots to match your natural finger positions, tap and lift your right three fingers all at once to position dots 4, 5, and 6, followed immediately by your left three fingers for dots 1, 2, and 3.

   You can also use gestures to perform actions such as the following:

Action	Gesture
Enter a space	Swipe right with one finger; in screen away mode, swipe to *your* right
Delete the previous character	Swipe left with one finger
Move to a new line	Swipe right with two fingers
Cycle through spelling suggestions	Swipe up or down with one finger
Enter a carriage return, or send a message (in Messages)	Swipe up with three fingers
Cycle through the braille modes	Swipe left or right with three fingers
Translate immediately (when contractions are enabled)	Swipe down with two fingers
Switch to the next keyboard	Swipe up with two fingers

4. To exit Braille Screen Input, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or adjust the rotor to another setting.

Change Braille Screen Input settings

1. Go to Settings 🖥 > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > Braille Screen Input.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Set six-dot or contracted braille as the default.

   - Reverse the dot positions for six-dot braille.

3. To view or edit the commands and gestures you can perform when Braille Screen Input is turned on, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Braille Screen Input.

Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone

You can customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands.

2. Tap any of the following:

   - *All Commands:* Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Edit, Add Gesture, or Add Keyboard Shortcut.

   - *Touch Gestures:* List the gestures and the associated commands.

   - *Handwriting:* List the gestures for handwriting and the associated commands.

   - *Braille Screen Input:* List the gestures for Braille Screen Input and the associated commands.

To clear your custom gestures and keyboard shortcuts, tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

If you use a pointer device with iPhone, you can adjust how it works with VoiceOver.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver.

2. Below Pointer Control, tap any of the following:

   - *Pointer:* Set the pointer to ignore, follow, or move the VoiceOver cursor.

   - *Speak Under Pointer:* You can adjust the delay to speak the item under the pointer.

Use VoiceOver for images and videos on iPhone

You can use the Camera 📷 and Photos 🌸 apps with VoiceOver, even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver can provide image descriptions, and you can even add your own descriptions using Markup.

Take photos and videos in Camera

When you use Camera, VoiceOver describes objects in the viewfinder.

To take a photo or start, pause, or resume a video recording, double-tap the screen with two fingers.

Explore images

When you use the Image Explorer, VoiceOver tells you about people, objects, text, and tables within images. You can navigate receipts and nutrition labels in logical order, or move your finger over a photo to discover a person's position relative to other objects.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition, then turn on Image Descriptions.

2. In an app such as Photos or Safari, select an image.

3. Swipe up to hear more options, then double-tap when you hear "Explore image features."

4. Move your finger around on the image to find out the position of each object.

Add custom image descriptions

Using Markup, you can add your own descriptions to images. VoiceOver reads your custom descriptions when you use the Image Explorer.

1. In a supported app such as Photos, tap Ⓐ.

2. In the Markup toolbar, tap ⊕, then tap Description.

3. Enter your description, then tap Done.

Trim videos in Photos

1. Select the video you want to trim, then double-tap.

2. Select Edit, then double-tap.

3. Select Start or End (on the media scrubber), then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.

4. When you're finished, select Done, then double-tap.

Use VoiceOver in apps on iPhone

You can use VoiceOver to interact with apps, even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver is supported in the built-in Apple apps that came with your iPhone—such as Safari 🧭, Maps 🗺️, and more. With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of images and screen elements even on webpages and in apps without accessibility information.

Browse the web in Safari

-   *Search the web:* Select the address field, double-tap to invoke the keyboard, then enter a search term, phrase, or URL. Select a search suggestion, then double-tap.

-   *Skip to the next element on a webpage:* Set the rotor to the element type—such as headings, links, and form controls—then swipe up or down.

-   *Set the rotor settings for web browsing:* Go to Settings ⚙️ > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Select or deselect items, or drag ≡ up or down to reposition an item.

-   *Skip images while navigating:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigate Images. You can choose to skip all images or only those without descriptions.

-   *Reduce page clutter for easier reading and navigation:* In the Safari address field, select the Format Options button, double-tap, select Show Reader View (not available for all webpages), then double-tap.

💡 **Tip:** If you use Magic Keyboard with iPhone, you can use single-key Quick Nav for web browsing.

Navigate in Maps

-   *Control how the map tracks your current location:* Select ➤, then double-tap until you hear the tracking option you want.

    -   *Tracking on:* The map automatically centers on your current location.

    -   *Tracking on with heading:* The map automatically centers on your current location and rotates so that the heading you're facing is at the top of the screen. In this mode, iPhone speaks street names and points of interest as you approach them.

    -   *Tracking off:* The map doesn't automatically center on your current location.

-   *Explore the map:* Drag your finger around the screen, or swipe left or right to move to another item.

- *Zoom in or out:* Select the map, set the rotor to Zoom, then swipe up or down with one finger.

- *Pan the map:* Swipe with three fingers.

- *Browse points of interest shown on the map:* Set the rotor to Points of Interest, then swipe up or down with one finger.

- *Follow a road:* Hold your finger down on the road, wait until you hear "pause to follow," then move your finger along the road.

- *Get information about a location:* Select the location (for example, a business, landmark or pin), then double-tap to open the information card. Swipe left or right to hear information such as directions, street address, phone number, business hours, and customer reviews.

Read PDF documents

In the Books 📖 and Files 📁 apps, you can use VoiceOver to read PDF documents. VoiceOver even describes detailed information—such as forms, tables, and lists.

Make and receive phone calls

In the Phone 📞 app, you can use VoiceOver to make and receive calls.

- *Answer or end a call:* Double-tap the screen with two fingers.

  When a phone call is established with VoiceOver on, the screen displays the numeric keypad by default, instead of showing call options.

- *Display call options:* Select the Hide button in the lower-right corner, then double-tap.

- *Display the numeric keypad again:* Select the Keypad button near the center of the screen, then double-tap.

Trim voice memo recordings

In the Voice Memos 🎙️ app, you can use VoiceOver to edit recordings.

1. Select the recording you want to trim, then double-tap.

2. Select •••, then double-tap.

3. Select Edit Recording, then double-tap.

4. Select ⬜, then double-tap.

5. In the Waveform Overview, select Trim Beginning or Trim End, then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.

6. Select Trim, then double-tap.

7. Select Save, then double-tap.

8. Select Done, then double-tap.

Read math equations

VoiceOver can read math equations on the web (encoded using MathML) and in supported Apple apps such as Numbers and Keynote.

-   *Hear an equation:* Have VoiceOver read the text as usual. VoiceOver says "math" before it starts reading an equation.

-   *Explore the equation:* Double-tap the selected equation to display it in full screen and move through it one element at a time. Swipe left or right to read elements of the equation. Use the rotor to select Symbols, Small Expressions, Medium Expressions, or Large Expressions, then swipe up or down to hear the next element of that size. You can continue to double-tap the selected element to "drill down" into the equation to focus on the selected element, then swipe left or right, or up or down, to read one part at a time.

Equations spoken by VoiceOver can also be output to a braille device using Nemeth Code, as well as the codes used by Unified English Braille, British English, French, and Greek. See Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone.

Use VoiceOver Recognition on the web or in apps without accessibility information

Note: VoiceOver Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, for navigation, or for the diagnosis or treatment of any medical condition.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition.

2. Turn on any of the following:

    -   *Image Descriptions:* Get descriptions of images in apps and on the web.

    -   *Screen Recognition:* Get descriptions of screen elements in apps.

    -   *Text Recognition:* Get descriptions of text found in images.

3. Tap Feedback Style, then choose Speak, Play Sound, or Do Nothing.

Vision

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

In many apps, you can zoom in or out on specific items. For example, you can double-tap or pinch to look closer in Photos or expand webpage columns in Safari. You can also use the Zoom feature to magnify the screen no matter what you're doing. You can magnify the entire screen (Full Screen Zoom) or magnify only part of the screen with a resizable lens (Window Zoom). And, you can use Zoom together with VoiceOver.

Set up Zoom

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Zoom, then turn on Zoom.

2. Adjust any of the following:

   - *Follow Focus:* Track your selections, the text insertion point, and your typing.

   - *Smart Typing:* Switch to Window Zoom when a keyboard appears.

   - *Keyboard Shortcuts:* Control Zoom using shortcuts on an external keyboard.

   - *Zoom Controller:* Turn the controller on, set controller actions, and adjust the color and opacity.

   - *Zoom Region:* Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.

   - *Zoom Filter:* Choose None, Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.

   - *Maximum Zoom Level:* Drag the slider to adjust the level.

3. If you use iPhone with a pointer device, you can also set the following below Pointer Control:

   - *Zoom Pan:* Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges to set how the screen image moves with the pointer.

   - *Adjust Size with Zoom:* Allow the pointer to scale with zoom.

4. To add Zoom to Accessibility Shortcut, go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Zoom.

Use Zoom

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers or use accessibility shortcuts to turn on Zoom.

2. To see more of the screen, do any of the following:

    *   *Adjust the magnification:* Double-tap the screen with three fingers (without lifting your fingers after the second tap), then drag up or down. Or triple-tap with three fingers, then drag the Zoom Level slider.

    *   *Move the Zoom lens:* (Window Zoom) Drag the handle at the bottom of the Zoom lens.

    *   *Pan to another area:* (Full Screen Zoom) Drag the screen with three fingers.

3. To adjust the settings with the Zoom menu, triple-tap with three fingers, then adjust any of the following:

    *   *Choose Region:* Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.

    *   *Resize Lens:* (Window Zoom) Tap Resize Lens, then drag any of the round handles that appear.

    *   *Choose Filter:* Choose Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.

    *   *Show Controller:* Show the Zoom Controller.

4. To use the Zoom Controller, do any of the following:

    *   *Show the Zoom menu:* Tap the controller.

    *   *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap the controller.

    *   *Pan:* When zoomed in, drag the controller.

While using Zoom with Magic Keyboard, the Zoom region follows the insertion point, keeping it in the center of the display. See Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone.

To turn off Zoom, double-tap the screen with three fingers or use accessibility shortcuts.

On an iPhone with Display Zoom, you can see larger onscreen controls. Go to Settings > Display & Brightness > View, then turn on Display Zoom.

Adjust the display and text size on iPhone

If you have color blindness or other vision challenges, you can customize the display settings to make the screen easier to see.

Use display accommodations

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Bold Text:* Display the text in boldface characters.

- *Larger Text:* Turn on Larger Accessibility Sizes, then adjust the text size using the Font Size slider.

  This setting adjusts to your preferred text size in apps that support Dynamic Type, such as Settings, Calendar, Contacts, Mail, Messages, and Notes.

- *Button Shapes:* This setting underlines text you can tap.

- *On/Off Labels:* This setting indicates switches turned on with "1" and switches turned off with "0".

- *Reduce Transparency:* This setting reduces the transparency and blurs on some backgrounds.

- *Increase Contrast:* This setting improves the contrast and legibility by altering color and text styling.

  Apps that support Dynamic Type—such as Settings, Calendar, Contacts, Mail, Messages, and Notes—adjust to your preferred text size.

- *Differentiate Without Color:* This setting replaces user interface items that rely on color to convey information with alternatives.

- *Smart Invert or Classic Invert:* Smart Invert Colors reverses the colors of the display, except for images, media, and some apps that use dark color styles.

- *Color Filters:* Tap a filter to apply it. To adjust the intensity or hue, drag the sliders.

- *Reduce White Point:* This setting reduces the intensity of bright colors.

- *Auto-Brightness:* This setting automatically adjusts the screen brightness for current light conditions using the built-in ambient light sensor.

To learn about applying these effects to specific apps, see Customize accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone. To learn about applying these effects to only the contents of the zoom window, see Zoom in on the iPhone screen.

Customize iPhone for motion sensitivities

If you have sensitivity to motion effects or screen movement on your iPhone, you can stop or reduce the movement of some screen elements, such as:

- Parallax effect of wallpaper, apps, and alerts

- Screen transitions

- Siri animations

- Typing autocompletion

- Animated effects in Messages

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Motion.

2. Turn on or off any of the following controls:

   - *Reduce Motion:* Reduces the motion of the user interface, including the parallax effect of icons.

   - *Auto-Play Message Effects:* Allows the Messages app to automatically play full-screen effects. If you turn this setting off, you can still manually play effects by tapping Replay below the message bubble.

   - *Auto-Play Video Previews:* Allows apps such as the App Store to automatically play video previews.

   - *Limit Frame Rate:* Limits the maximum frame rate of the display to 60 frames per second (on iPhone 13 Pro and iPhone 13 Pro Max).

You can apply these effects to specific apps; see Customize accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone.

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Even if VoiceOver is turned off, you can have iPhone speak selected text or the entire screen. iPhone can also provide feedback and speak text corrections and suggestions as you type.

Change the speech settings

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Spoken Content.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Speak Selection:* To hear text you selected, tap the Speak button.

- *Speak Screen:* To hear the entire screen, swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen.

- *Speech Controller:* Show the controller for quick access to Speak Screen and Speak on Touch.

- *Highlight Content:* iPhone can highlight words, sentences, or both as they're spoken. You can change the highlight color and style.

- *Typing Feedback:* You can configure typing feedback for the onscreen and external keyboards and choose to have iPhone speak each character, entire words, auto-corrections, auto-capitalizations, and typing predictions.

  To hear typing predictions, you also need to go to Settings > General > Keyboards, then turn on Predictive.

- *Voices:* Choose a voice and dialect.

- *Speaking Rate:* Drag the slider.

- *Pronunciations:* Dictate or spell out how you want certain phrases to be spoken.

Hear iPhone speak

🎙 **Siri:** Say something like: "Speak screen." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or do any of the following:

- *Hear selected text:* Select the text, then tap Speak.

- *Hear the entire screen:* Swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen. Use the controls that appear to pause speaking or adjust the rate.

- *Hear typing feedback:* Start typing. To hear typing predictions (when turned on), touch and hold each word.

Hear audio descriptions for video content on iPhone

If you have video content that includes audio descriptions of scenes, iPhone can play the descriptions for you.

1. Go to Settings 🎛 > Accessibility > Audio Descriptions.

2. Turn on Audio Descriptions.

Physical and Motor

Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

AssistiveTouch helps you use iPhone if you have difficulty touching the screen or pressing the buttons. You can use AssistiveTouch without any accessory to perform actions or gestures that are difficult for you. You can also use a compatible adaptive accessory (such as a joystick) together with AssistiveTouch to control iPhone.

With AssistiveTouch, you can use a simple tap (or the equivalent on your accessory) to perform actions such as the following:

- Open the AssistiveTouch menu

- Go to the Home Screen

- Double-tap

- Perform multifinger gestures

- Perform scroll gestures

- Activate Siri

- Access Control Center, notifications, the Lock Screen, or the App Switcher

- Adjust the volume on iPhone

- Shake iPhone

- Take a screenshot

- Use 3D Touch (on supported iPhone models)

- Use Apple Pay

- Use Emergency SOS

- Speak screen

- Adjust dwell settings

- Restart iPhone

Set up AssistiveTouch

🎤 **Siri:** Say something like: "Turn on AssistiveTouch" or "Turn off AssistiveTouch." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or do the following:

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.

2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.

3. To customize AssistiveTouch, tap any of the following:

   - *Customize Top Level Menu:* Tap an icon to change its action. Tap ⎯ or + to change the number of icons in the menu. The menu can have up to eight icons.

   - *Single-Tap, Double-Tap, Long Press, or 3D Touch:* Assign custom actions that run when you interact with the menu button. 3D Touch is available only on supported iPhone models.

   - *Create New Gesture:* Add your favorite gestures.

   - *Idle Opacity:* Adjust the visibility of the menu button when not in use.

   - *Confirm with AssistiveTouch:* On an iPhone with Face ID, confirm payments with Face ID by using AssistiveTouch instead of double-clicking the side button.

   💡 **Tip:** To turn AssistiveTouch on or off quickly, triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models).

Add a pointer device

You can connect Bluetooth and USB assistive pointer devices, such as trackpads, joysticks, and mouse devices.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.

2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.

3. Below Pointer Devices, tap any of the following:

   - *Devices:* Pair or unpair devices and customize buttons.

   - *Mouse Keys:* Allow the AssistiveTouch pointer to be controlled using the keyboard number pad.

   - *Pointer Style:* Adjust the size, color, and auto-hide settings.

   - *Show Onscreen Keyboard:* Display the onscreen keyboard.

   - *Always Show Menu:* Show the AssistiveTouch menu when a pointer device is connected.

   - *Tracking speed:* Drag the slider to adjust the speed.

   - *Drag Lock:* Turn on to enable dragging.

   - *Zoom Pan:* Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges.

See Change the pointer appearance when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone.

Set up Dwell Control

iPhone performs a selected action when you hold the cursor still on a screen element or an area of the screen.

1. Go to Settings 🖲 > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn on Dwell Control.

2. Adjust any of the following:

   - *Fallback Action:* Turn on to revert the dwell action to the selected fallback action after performing an operation.

   - *Movement Tolerance:* Adjust the distance the cursor can move while dwelling on an item.

   - *Hot Corners:* Perform a selected action—such as take a screenshot, open Control Center, activate Siri, scroll, or use a shortcut—when the cursor dwells in a corner of the screen.

   - *Time needed to initiate a dwell action:* Tap − or + .

Move the AssistiveTouch menu button

Drag the menu button to a new location on the screen.

Use AssistiveTouch

Tap the menu button, then choose an action or gesture.

For a multifinger gesture, do the following:

- *Pinch:* Tap Custom, then tap Pinch. When the pinch circles appear, touch anywhere on the screen to move the pinch circles, then drag them in or out to perform a pinch gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.

- *Multifinger swipe or drag:* Tap Device > More > Gestures, then tap the number of digits needed for the gesture. When the circles appear on the screen, swipe or drag in the direction required by the gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.

To return to the previous menu, tap the arrow in the center of the menu. To exit the menu without performing a gesture: Tap anywhere outside the menu.

Create custom gestures

You can add your favorite gestures (such as touch and hold or two-finger rotation) to the AssistiveTouch menu. You can even create several gestures with different degrees of rotation.

1. Go to Settings 🖲 > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Create New Gesture.

2. Perform your gesture on the recording screen. For example:

   - *Touch-and-hold gesture:* Touch and hold your finger in one spot until the recording progress bar reaches halfway, then lift your finger. Be careful not to move your finger while recording, or the gesture will be recorded as a drag.

   - *Two-finger rotation gesture:* Rotate two fingers on the iPhone screen around a point between them. (You can do this with a single finger or stylus—just create each arc separately, one after the other.)

   If you record a sequence of taps or drag gestures, they're all played back at the same time. For example, using one finger or a stylus to record four separate, sequential taps at four locations on the screen creates a simultaneous four-finger tap.

3. If your gesture doesn't turn out quite right, tap Cancel, then try again.

4. When you're satisfied with your gesture, tap Save, then name the gesture.

To use your custom gesture, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button, tap Custom, then choose the gesture. When the blue circles representing your gesture appear, drag them to where you want to use the gesture, then release.

Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch

If you have difficulties with hand tremors, dexterity, or fine motor control, you can adjust how the iPhone touchscreen responds to tap, swipe, and touch-and-hold gestures. You can have iPhone recognize faster or slower touches and ignore multiple touches. You can also prevent iPhone from waking when you touch the screen, or turn off Shake to Undo if you unintentionally shake iPhone.

Adjust settings for taps, swipes, and multiple touches

1. Go to Settings 🖲 > Accessibility > Touch > Touch Accommodations, then turn on Touch Accommodations.

2. You can configure iPhone to do any of the following:

- *Respond to touches of a certain duration:* Turn on Hold Duration, then tap − or + to adjust the duration. (The default is 0.10 seconds.)

- *Prevent unintended swipe gestures:* To increase the amount of movement required before a swipe gesture begins, tap Swipe Gestures, turn on Swipe Gestures, then adjust required movement.

- *Treat multiple touches as a single touch:* Turn on Ignore Repeat, then tap − or + to adjust the amount of time allowed between multiple touches.

- *Respond to the first or last place you touch:* Choose Use Initial Touch Location or Use Final Touch Location.

  If you choose Use Initial Touch Location, iPhone uses the location of your first tap—when you tap an app on the Home Screen, for example. If you choose Use Final Touch Location, iPhone registers the tap where you lift your finger. iPhone responds to a tap when you lift your finger within a certain period of time. Tap − or + to adjust the timing. Your device can respond to other gestures, such as a drag gesture, if you wait longer than the gesture delay.

Adjust settings for touch-and-hold gestures

The touch-and-hold gesture reveals content previews, actions, and contextual menus. If you have trouble performing this gesture, do the following:

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Accessibility > Touch, then tap Haptic Touch or 3D & Haptic Touch.

2. Choose the touch duration—Fast or Slow.

3. On an iPhone with 3D Touch, you can also choose the pressure needed—Light, Medium, or Firm.

4. Test the new setting on the image at the bottom of the screen.

Turn off Tap to Wake

On supported iPhone models, you can prevent touches on the display from waking iPhone. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Tap to Wake.

Turn off Shake to Undo

If you tend to unintentionally shake iPhone, you can turn off Shake to Undo. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Accessibility > Touch.

💡 **Tip:** To undo text edits, swipe left with three fingers.

Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts

You can double-tap and triple-tap on the back of iPhone to perform actions such as take a screenshot, turn on an accessibility feature, run a shortcut, and more. Back Tap is available on iPhone 8 and later.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap.

2. Choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then choose an action.

3. To perform the action you set, double-tap or triple-tap on the back of iPhone.

To turn off Back tap, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap, choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then tap None.

Reach the top of the iPhone screen with one hand

When you use iPhone with one hand in Portrait orientation, you can use Reachability to lower the top half of the screen so it's within easy reach of your thumb. (Not supported on iPhone SE (1st generation).)
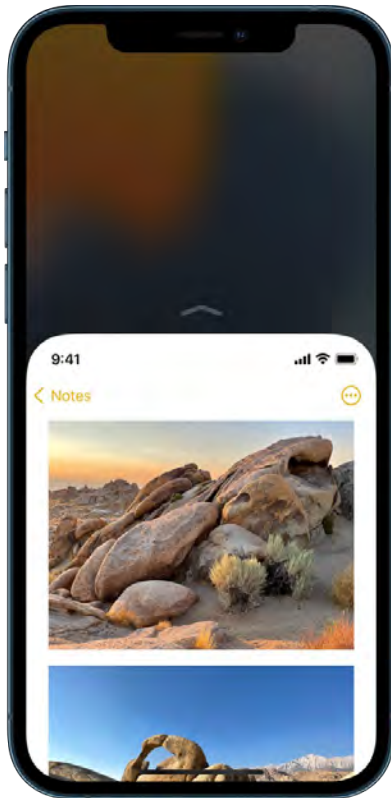
1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Touch, then turn on Reachability.

2. To lower the top half of the screen, do one the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down on the bottom edge of the screen.

   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Lightly double-tap the Home button.

3. To return to the full screen, tap the upper half of the screen.

Route and automatically answer calls on iPhone

You can automatically direct the audio of phone or FaceTime calls to the iPhone speaker, a Bluetooth headset, or your hearing devices. iPhone can also automatically answer calls after a specific duration.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Accessibility > Touch > Call Audio Routing, then choose an audio destination.

2. Tap Auto-Answer Calls, turn on Auto-Answer Calls, then set the duration of time before the call is answered by tapping ─ or ＋ .

During a call, you can switch the audio routing from your hearing aid to the iPhone speaker by removing the hearing aid from your ear.

Customize iPhone for vibration sensitivities

If you have a sensitivity or intolerance to vibrations, you can customize iPhone to suit your needs.

- *Set vibration options for specific alerts:* Go to Settings 🔘 > Sounds & Haptics. See Change iPhone sounds and vibrations.

- *Turn off all vibrations:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Vibration.

  Note: This setting turns off vibrations for earthquake, tsunami, and other emergency alerts.

Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

Set up Face ID with Accessibility Options

By default, setting up Face ID requires you to gently move your head in a circle to show all the angles of your face. If you can't perform the full range of head motion, you can still set up Face ID without moving your head.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Face ID & Passcode.

2. Position your face within the frame, then tap Accessibility Options.

Face ID is still secure but requires more consistency in how you look at iPhone.

Change attention settings

For additional security, Face ID is *attention aware*. It unlocks iPhone only when your eyes are open and looking at the screen. iPhone can also reveal notifications and messages, keep the screen lit when you're reading, or lower the volume of alerts.

If you don't want iPhone to check for your attention, do the following:

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Face ID & Passcode.

2. Turn on or off any of the following:

   - Require Attention for Face ID

   - Attention Aware Features

   - Haptic on Successful Authentication

   These settings are turned off by default if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone.

Note: Requiring attention makes Face ID more secure.

Switch Control

Set up Switch Control on iPhone

If you have physical difficulties, you can use Switch Control to operate iPhone using one or more switches. With switches, you can select, tap, drag, type, and even draw freehand. You use a switch to select an item or location on the screen, then use the same (or a different) switch to choose an action.

Add a switch

You can use the iPhone screen, camera, microphone, or the back of iPhone, or you can add an external adaptive switch.

Before you add an external switch, connect it to iPhone, following the instructions that came with the switch. If the switch connects using Bluetooth, pair it with iPhone—turn on the switch, go to Settings ⚙ > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, tap the name of the switch, then follow the onscreen instructions.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches.

2. Tap Add New Switch, then choose any of the following:

   - *External:* Choose a Bluetooth switch or Made For iPhone (MFi) switch that plugs into the Lightning connector on iPhone.

   - *Screen:* Tap the iPhone screen to activate the switch.

   - *Camera:* Move your head left or right while facing the camera.

   - *Back Tap:* Double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone.

   - *Sound:* Make voiced and voiceless sounds such as "Oo" or a pop.

3. Assign an action to the switch.

   To ensure Switch Control functions correctly, you must assign a switch to the Select Item action and another switch to the Move to Next Item action.

Choose a scanning style and customize Switch Control

You can adjust the behavior of Switch Control in a variety of ways, to suit your specific needs and style.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Accessibility > Switch Control.

2. Tap Scanning Style, then choose one of the following:

   - *Auto Scanning:* The focus automatically moves to the next item after a specified duration.

   - *Manual Scanning:* You trigger a switch to move the focus to the next item (requires multiple switches).

   - *Single Switch Step Scanning:* You trigger a switch to move the focus to the next item; if no action is taken with a specified duration, the item with the focus is automatically activated.

3. Customize Switch Control by setting options such as the following:

- *Switches:* Add switches and specify their function.

- *Recipes:* Create, edit, and choose recipes to temporarily assign special actions to switches.

- *Auto Scanning Time:* Adjust the item scanning speed.

- *Pause on First Item:* Set scanning to pause on the first item in a group.

- *Loops:* Choose how many times to cycle through the screen before hiding Switch Control.

- *Move Repeat:* Set the delay before moving to the previous or next item while a switch is pressed.

- *Long Press:* Set whether a different action occurs when you press and hold a switch, and how long to wait before performing that action.

- *Tap Behavior:* Choose a tap behavior and set the interval for performing a second switch action to show the Scanner Menu.

- *Focused Item After Tap:* Choose whether Switch Control resumes scanning at an item you tap or from the beginning.

- *Hold Duration:* Set whether and how long you need to hold a switch down before it's accepted as a switch action.

- *Ignore Repeat:* Ignore accidental repeated switch triggers.

- *Gliding Cursor:* Adjust the point scanning style and speed.

- *Head Tracking:* Adjust settings for head tracking (on an iPhone with Face ID) and assign actions to facial expressions.

- *Sound Effects:* Turn on sound effects.

- *Speech:* Speak items as they're scanned.

- *Menu Items:* Choose the actions shown in the Scanner Menu and the order in which they appear.

- *Group Items:* Group items for faster navigation.

- *Large Cursor:* Make the selection cursor larger.

- *Cursor Color:* Choose a different color.

- *Saved Gestures:* Create and save custom gestures to the Scanner Menu.

- *Confirm with Switch Control:* On an iPhone with Face ID, confirm payments with Face ID by using Switch Control instead of double-clicking the side button.

Turn Switch Control on or off

Important: Switch Control changes the gestures you use to control iPhone.

To turn Switch Control on or off, use any of the following methods:

- Go to Settings 🅢 > Accessibility > Switch Control.

- Triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID).

- Triple-click the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

- Use Control Center.

Use Switch Control on iPhone

With Switch Control, you can use the following methods to select an item on the screen:

- *Item scanning:* The focus moves (automatically or manually) from one item to the next until you select an item; this is the default scanning method.

- *Point scanning:* You select an item on the screen by pinpointing it with scanning crosshairs.

- *Head tracking:* (on an iPhone with Face ID) You move your head to control a pointer on the screen. You can also use facial expressions to perform actions.

After you select an item, you can choose an action (for example, tap, drag, or pinch) in the Scanner Menu.

Use item scanning

With item scanning, the focus sequentially moves from one item to the next item on the screen.

1. If you use Auto Scanning, watch or listen as the focus moves. If you use Manual Scanning, trigger your Move to Next Item action to move the focus.

2. When the focus surrounds the item you want, trigger your Select Item switch.

3. In the Scanner Menu, choose an action such as the following:

- Tap

- Gestures

- Scroll

- Media Controls

- More (the dots at the bottom of the menu) for more options

- Home (to return to the Home Screen)

- Device (for other hardware actions)

- Settings (to adjust Switch Control behavior)

The available actions in the Scanner Menu depend on the selected item.

To dismiss the Scanner menu without choosing an action, trigger your switch while the original item is highlighted and all the icons in the Scanner Menu are dimmed.

Use point scanning

With point scanning, you select an item on the screen by pinpointing it with scanning crosshairs.

1. Use item scanning to select an item.

2. In the Scanner Menu, choose Gliding Cursor.

3. To position the vertical crosshair, do the following:

- Trigger your Select Item switch when the wide vertical band is over the item you want.

- Trigger your Select Item switch again when the fine vertical line is over the item.

4. Repeat to position the horizontal crosshair.

5. Choose an action from the Scanner Menu.

To return to item scanning, choose Item Mode in the Scanner Menu.

Use head tracking

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can move your head to control a pointer on the screen. You can also use facial expressions to perform actions.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Accessibility > Switch Control > Head Tracking.

2. Turn on Head Tracking, then do any of the following:

- *Assign actions to facial expressions:* Choose actions to perform when you smile, open your mouth, stick out your tongue, or raise your eyebrows.

- *Choose how the pointer tracks your head movement:* Tap Tracking Mode, then choose With Face, When Facing Screen Edges, or Relative to Head.

- *Adjust the pointer speed:* Tap ⊖ or ⊕ .

Use Voice Control to interact with iPhone

You can control iPhone with just your voice. Speak commands to perform gestures, interact with screen elements, dictate and edit text, and more.

Set up Voice Control

Before you turn on Voice Control for the first time, make sure iPhone is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. After iPhone completes a one-time file download from Apple, you don't need an internet connection to use Voice Control.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Accessibility > Voice Control.

2. Tap Set Up Voice Control, then tap Continue to start the file download.

   When the download is complete, 🎤 appears in the status bar to indicate Voice Control is turned on.

3. Set options such as the following:

- *Language:* Set the language and download languages for offline use.

- *Customize Commands:* View the available commands and create new commands.

- *Vocabulary:* Teach Voice Control new words.

- *Show Confirmation:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, a visual confirmation appears at the top of the screen.

- *Play Sound:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, an audible sound is played.

- *Show Hints:* See command suggestions and hints.

- *Overlay:* Display numbers, names, or a grid over screen elements.

- *Attention Aware:* On an iPhone with Face ID, Voice Control wakes up when you look at your iPhone and goes to sleep when you look away.

Turn Voice Control on or off

Turn Voice Control off or on

After you set up Voice Control, you can turn it on or off quickly by using any of the following methods:

- Activate Siri and say "Turn on Voice Control."

- Say "Turn off Voice Control."

- Add Voice Control to Accessibility Shortcuts—go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Voice Control.

Learn Voice Control commands

When Voice Control is turned on, you can say commands such as the following:

- "Open Control Center"

- "Go home"

- "Tap *item name*"

- "Open *app name*"

- "Take screenshot"

- "Turn up volume"

To learn more Voice Control commands, say "Show me what to say" or "Show commands."

Use a screen overlay

For faster interactions, you can navigate iPhone with a screen overlay that shows item names, numbers, or a grid.

- *Item names:* Say "Show names" or "Show names continuously," then say "Tap *item name*."

- *Numbers:* Say "Show numbers" or "Show numbers continuously," then say the number next to the item you want. You can also give a command to perform a gesture, such as "Tap *number*," "Long press *number*," "Swipe up at *number*," or "Double tap *number*."

- *Grid:* To interact with a screen location not represented by an item name or number, say "Show grid" or "Show grid continuously," then do any of the following:

  - *Drill down:* Say a number to show a more detailed grid.

  - *Say a command to interact with an area of the grid:* Say something like, "Tap *number*" or "Zoom in *number*."

  💡 **Tip:** To adjust the number of grid rows and columns, go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Voice Control > Overlay, then select Numbered Grid. When Voice Control is turned on, you can also say something like, "Show grid with five rows," or "Show grid continuously with three columns."

To turn off the overlay, say "Hide names," "Hide numbers," or "Hide grid."

Switch between Dictation Mode and Command Mode

When you're working in a text input area—for example, writing a document, email, or message—you can easily switch between Dictation mode and Command mode as needed. In Dictation mode (the default), any words you say that aren't Voice Control commands are entered as text. In Command mode, those words are ignored and aren't entered as text; Voice Control responds only to commands. Command mode is especially helpful when you need to use a series of commands and want to prevent what you say from inadvertently being entered in a text input area.

To switch to Command mode, say "Command mode." When Command mode is on, a dark icon of a crossed-out character appears in the text input area to indicate you can't dictate. To switch back to Dictation mode, say "Dictation mode."

Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone

You can adjust accessibility settings for the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home button (on other iPhone models).

---

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility, then tap Side Button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home Button (on other iPhone models).

2. Set any of the following:

   - *Click Speed:* Choose the speed required to double-click or triple-click the button—Default, Slow, or Slowest.

   - *Press and Hold to Speak:* Choose whether Siri responds when you press and hold the button.

   - *Rest Finger to Open:* On an iPhone with Touch ID, you can unlock and open iPhone by resting your finger on Touch ID.

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can also use AssistiveTouch or use Switch Control to confirm payments with Face ID instead of double-clicking the top button.

Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone

On the Apple TV Remote on iPhone, you can use buttons instead of swipe gestures.

Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Apple TV Remote, then turn on Directional Buttons.

Change the pointer appearance when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone

If you use a mouse or trackpad with iPhone, you can change the appearance of the pointer by adjusting its color, shape, size, scrolling speed, and more.

Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Pointer Control, then adjust any of the following:

- Increase Contrast

- Automatically Hide Pointer

- Color

- Pointer size

- Scrolling Speed

To customize the buttons of the pointing device, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Devices.

See Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device and Zoom in on the iPhone screen.

Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings on iPhone

You can adjust the onscreen (software) keyboard on iPhone. If you use an external (hardware) keyboard with iPhone, you can customize keyboard shortcuts and change settings such as the key repeat rate.

Set the onscreen keyboard to display only uppercase letters

If you have difficulty seeing the onscreen keyboard, you can set it to display only uppercase letters.

Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Keyboards, then turn off Show Lowercase Keys.

Type on a larger onscreen keyboard

Rotate iPhone to landscape orientation to use a larger keyboard for typing in many apps, including Mail, Safari, Messages, Notes, and Contacts.

For information about other ways to adjust the onscreen keyboard, see Type with one hand and Set typing options.

Control iPhone with an external keyboard

If you have difficulty using the touchscreen, you can control your iPhone using shortcuts on Magic Keyboard (sold separately).

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Keyboards, tap Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access.

2. Control your iPhone using keyboard shortcuts.

Action	Shortcut
Go to the next item	Tab
Go to the previous item	Shift-Tab
Activate the selected item	Space bar
Go to the Home Screen	Command-H
Open the App Switcher	Tab-A
Open Control Center	Tab-C
Open Notification Center	Tab-N
Show Help	Tab-H

3. To customize the keyboard shortcuts, tap Commands.

4. To customize the appearance of the focus, tap any of the following:

- Auto-Hide

- Increase Size

- High Contrast

- Color

Change how the keys respond on an external keyboard

If you have difficulty using an external keyboard, you can adjust the settings.

Go to Settings 🔅 > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap any of the following:

- *Key Repeat:* You can adjust the repeat interval and delay.

- *Sticky Keys:* Use Sticky Keys to press and hold modifier keys, such as Command and Option, as you press another key.

- *Slow Keys:* Use Slow Keys to adjust the time between when a key is pressed and when it's activated.

Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods on iPhone

If you have AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can adjust the accessibility settings to suit your motor or hearing needs.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > AirPods.

2. If you have multiple AirPods, select one.

3. Set any of the following options:

   - *Press Speed:* Adjust how quickly you must press two or three times before an action occurs.

   - *Press and Hold Duration:* Adjust the duration required to press and hold on your AirPods.

   - *Noise Cancellation with One AirPod:* (AirPods Pro) Turn on noise cancellation even when you're using only one of your AirPods.

   - *Spatial Audio Head Tracking:* (AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, and AirPods Max) When you turn on Follow iPhone, the audio adjusts based on your head movement (for supported audio and video content).

4. To customize your audio, tap Audio Accessibility Settings.

Hearing

Use hearing devices with iPhone

You can use Made for iPhone (MFi) hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings.

Pair a hearing device with iPhone

If your hearing devices aren't listed in Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, you need to pair them with iPhone.

1. Open the battery doors on your hearing devices.

2. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then make sure Bluetooth is turned on.

3. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.

4. Close the battery doors on your hearing devices.

5. When their names appear below MFi Hearing Devices (this could take a minute), tap the names and respond to the pairing requests.

   Pairing can take as long as 60 seconds—don't try to stream audio or otherwise use the hearing devices until pairing is finished. When pairing is finished, you hear a series of beeps and a tone, and a checkmark appears next to the hearing devices in the Devices list.

You need to pair your devices only once (and your audiologist might do it for you). After that, your hearing devices automatically reconnect to iPhone whenever they turn on.

Adjust the settings and view the status of your hearing devices

- *In Settings:* Go to Settings 🖲 > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices.

- *Using accessibility shortcuts:* See Use accessibility shortcuts on iPhone.

- *On the Lock Screen:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices, then turn on Control on Lock Screen. From the Lock Screen, you can do the following:

  - Check battery status.

  - Adjust ambient microphone volume and equalization.

  - Choose which hearing device (left, right, or both) receives streaming audio.

  - Control Live Listen.

  - Choose whether call audio and media audio are routed to the hearing device.

  - Choose to play ringtones through the hearing device.

Use your hearing devices with more than one device

If you pair your hearing devices with more than one device (both iPhone and iPad, for example), the connection for your hearing devices automatically switches from one to the other when you do something that generates audio on the other device, or when you receive a phone call on iPhone.

Changes you make to hearing device settings on one device are automatically sent to your other devices.

1. Sign in with your Apple ID on all the devices.

2. Connect all the devices to the same Wi-Fi network.

Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility

Hearing Aid Compatibility may reduce interference and improve audio quality with some hearing aid models.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.

2. Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility.

For iPhone hearing aid compatibility ratings, see the Apple Support article About Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC) requirements for iPhone.

Hearing aid compatibility ratings aren't a guarantee that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone. Some hearing aids might work well with phones that do not meet the FCC requirements for hearing aid compatibility. To ensure that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone, use them together before purchasing.

Stream audio to your hearing devices

You can stream audio from Phone, Siri, Apple Music, Apple Podcasts, Apple TV, and more. Tap 🔊 in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or in the Now Playing controls for the app you're listening to, then choose your hearing device.

You can also automatically route audio calls to a hearing device.

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

You can stream sound from the microphone on iPhone to your Made For iPhone (MFi) hearing devices or AirPods. This can help you hear better in some situations—for example, when having a conversation in a noisy environment.

---

1. If you're using AirPods, place them in your ears.

   If your AirPods don't automatically connect to iPhone, tap 🔊 in Control Center or on the Lock Screen, then choose your AirPods.

2. Turn Live Listen on or off with one of the following methods:

   - Open Control Center, tap 👂, tap your hearing device or AirPods, then tap Live Listen.

     (If you don't see 👂, add it to Control Center—go to Settings ⚙️ > Control Center, then choose Hearing.)

   - Triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models), tap Hearing Devices, then tap Live Listen.

3. Position iPhone near the sound source.

Recognize sounds using iPhone

Your iPhone can continuously listen for certain sounds—such as a crying baby, doorbell, or siren—and notify you when it recognizes these sounds.

Note: Don't rely on your iPhone to recognize sounds in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, in high-risk or emergency situations, or for navigation.

Set up Sound Recognition

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Accessibility > Sound Recognition, then turn on Sound Recognition.

2. Tap Sounds, then turn on the sounds you want iPhone to recognize.

💡 **Tip:** To quickly turn Sound Recognition on or off, use Control Center.

Set up and use RTT and TTY on iPhone

If you have hearing or speech difficulties, you can communicate by telephone using Teletype (TTY) or real-time text (RTT)—protocols that transmit text as you type and allow the recipient to read the message right away. RTT is a more advanced protocol that transmits audio as you type text.

iPhone provides built-in Software RTT and TTY from the Phone app—it requires no additional devices. If you turn on Software RTT/TTY, iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.

iPhone also supports Hardware TTY, so you can connect iPhone to an external TTY device with the iPhone TTY Adapter (sold separately in many regions).

Important: RTT and TTY aren't supported by all carriers or in all countries or regions. RTT and TTY functionality depends on your carrier and network environment. When making an emergency call in the U.S., iPhone sends special characters or tones to alert the operator. The operator's ability to receive or respond to these tones can vary depending on your location. Apple doesn't guarantee that the operator will be able to receive or respond to an RTT or TTY call.

Set up RTT and TTY

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Accessibility.

2. Tap RTT/TTY or TTY, then do any of the following:

- If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line.

- Turn on Software RTT/TTY or Software TTY.

- Tap Relay Number, then enter the phone number to use for relay calls using Software RTT/TTY.

- Turn on Send Immediately to send each character as you type. Turn off to complete messages before sending.

- Turn on Answer All Calls as RTT/TTY.

- Turn on Hardware TTY.

When RTT or TTY is turned on, ☎ appears in the status bar at the top of the screen.

Connect iPhone to an external TTY device

If you turned on Hardware TTY in Settings, connect iPhone to your TTY device using the iPhone TTY Adapter. If Software TTY is also turned on, incoming calls default to Hardware TTY. For information about using a particular TTY device, see the documentation that came with it.

Start an RTT or TTY call

1. In the Phone app, choose a contact, then tap the phone number.

2. Choose RTT/TTY Call or RTT/TTY Relay Call.

3. Wait for the call to connect, then tap RTT/TTY.

   iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.

If you haven't turned RTT on and you receive an incoming RTT call, tap the RTT button to answer the call with RTT.

Type text during an RTT or TTY call

1. Enter your message in the text field.

   If you turned on Send Immediately in Settings, your recipient sees each character as you type. Otherwise, tap ⬆ to send the message.

2. To also transmit audio, tap 🎤.

Review the transcript of a Software RTT or TTY call

1. In the Phone app, tap Recents.

   RTT and TTY calls have 📞 next to them.

2. Next to the call you want to review, tap ⓘ.

Note: Continuity features aren't available for RTT and TTY support. Standard voice call rates apply for both Software RTT/TTY and Hardware TTY calls.

Adjust the mono audio, balance, and phone noise cancellation settings on iPhone

You can adjust mono audio, left-right stereo balance, and phone noise cancellation to suit your needs.

---

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Accessibility > Audio/Visual.

2. Adjust any of the following:

   - *Mono Audio:* Turn on to combine the left and right channels to play the same content.

   - *Balance:* Drag the Left Right Stereo Balance slider.

   - *Phone Noise Cancellation:* Uses air pressure to reduce ambient background noise to help you hear better when you're holding the receiver to your ear on phone calls in certain noisy environments. Phone noise cancellation is available and on by default on iPhone 12 and earlier, and can be turned off for your comfort.

Flash the LED for alerts on iPhone

If you can't hear the sounds that announce incoming calls and other alerts, iPhone can flash its LED (next to the camera lens on the back of iPhone). The LED flashes only if iPhone is locked.

💡 **Tip:** LED Flash for Alerts is a useful feature for anyone who might miss audible alerts in a noisy environment.

---

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Accessibility > Audio/Visual, then turn on LED Flash for Alerts.

2. To prevent LED flashes when iPhone is in silent mode, turn off Flash on Silent.

Adjust headphone audio settings on iPhone

With supported Apple and Beats headphones, you can amplify soft sounds and adjust certain frequencies to suit your hearing. These adjustments help music, movies, phone calls, and podcasts sound more crisp and clear.

Set headphone accommodations

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Accessibility > Audio/Visual > Headphone Accommodations, then turn on Headphone Accommodations.

2. Tap Custom Audio Setup, then follow the onscreen instructions. Or manually set any of the following:

   - *Tune Audio For:* Choose Balanced Tone, Vocal Range, Brightness, or Audiogram (if available).

   - *Level:* Choose Slight, Moderate, or Strong amplification of soft sounds.

   - *Phone:* Apply these audio settings to phone calls.

   - *Media:* Apply these audio settings to media playback.

   - *Transparency Mode:* (available when you have AirPods Pro connected to iPhone) Turn on Custom Transparency Mode, then adjust the amplification, balance, tone, and ambient noise reduction to help you hear what's happening around you. You can also turn on Conversation Boost to focus on a person talking in front of you. See Customize Transparency mode for AirPods Pro in the AirPods User Guide.

3. To preview your audio settings, tap Play Sample.

Add an audiogram

You can use an audiogram to customize your audio settings on supported Apple and Beats headphones. You can import an audiogram by taking a photo or importing a saved file.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Accessibility > Audio/Visual > Headphone Accommodations, turn on Headphone Accommodations, then tap Custom Audio Setup.

2. Select an audiogram from the list or tap Add Audiogram.

Play background sounds on iPhone to mask environmental noise

You can play calming sounds—such as ocean or rain—to mask unwanted environmental noise and help minimize distractions so you can focus or rest.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Accessibility > Audio/Visual > Background Sounds, then turn on Background Sounds.

2. Set any of the following:

   - *Sound:* Choose a sound; the audio file downloads to your iPhone.

   - *Volume:* Drag the slider.

   - *Use When Media is Playing:* Adjust the volume of the background sound when iPhone is playing music or other media.

   - *Stop Sounds When Locked:* Background sounds stop playing when iPhone is locked.

Display subtitles and captions for videos on iPhone

When you play video content in a supported app, you can turn on subtitles and closed captions (if available). iPhone usually shows standard subtitles and captions, but you can also choose special accessible captions—such as subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing (SDH)—if available.

Turn on subtitles and captions in the Apple TV app

1. While playing video content, tap 💬.

2. Choose from the list of available subtitles and captions.

Customize the subtitles and captions in supported video apps

1. Go to Settings 🖥 > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning.

2. If you prefer closed captioning or subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing when available, turn on Closed Captions + SDH.

3. Tap Style, then choose an existing caption style or create a new style based on the following:

   - Font, size, and color

   - Background color and opacity

   - Text opacity, edge style, and highlight

Show transcriptions for Intercom messages from HomePod on iPhone

If members of your home use HomePod for Intercom messages, iPhone can transcribe Intercom messages for you.

1. In the Home app, tap 🏠, then tap Home Settings.

2. Tap Intercom, then choose when you receive notifications.

3. Go to Settings 🅢 > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning, then turn on Show Audio Transcriptions.

See Use HomePod as an Intercom in the HomePod User Guide.

General

Use Guided Access on iPhone

Guided Access helps you stay focused on a task by temporarily restricting iPhone to a single app, and allowing you to control which app features are available. You can do any of the following:

- Disable areas of the screen that aren't relevant to a task, or areas where an accidental gesture might cause a distraction

- Disable the iPhone hardware buttons

- Limit how long someone can use the app

Set up Guided Access

1. Go to Settings 🅢 > Accessibility > Guided Access, then turn on Guided Access.

2. Adjust any of the following:

    - *Passcode Settings:* Tap Set Guided Access Passcode, then enter a passcode.

      You can also turn on Face ID (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID (on an iPhone with a Home button) as a way to end a Guided Access session.

    - *Time Limits:* Play a sound or speak the time remaining before a Guided Access session ends.

    - *Accessibility Shortcut:* Turn the shortcut on or off during Guided Access sessions.

    - *Display Auto-Lock:* Set how long it takes iPhone to automatically lock during a Guided Access session.

Start a Guided Access session

1. Open the app you want to use.

2. Turn on Guided Access using accessibility shortcuts.

3. Circle any areas of the screen you want to disable. Drag the mask into position or use the handles to adjust its size.

4. Tap Options, then turn on or off any of the following:

- Sleep/Wake Button

- Volume Buttons

- Motion (to prevent iPhone from switching from portrait to landscape or from responding to other motions)

- Keyboards

- Touch

- Time Limit

5. Tap Start.

End a Guided Access session

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Double-click the side button, then unlock with Face ID (if enabled). Or triple-click the side button, then enter the Guided Access passcode.

- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button, then unlock with Touch ID (if enabled). Or triple-click the Home button, then enter the Guided Access passcode.

Use accessibility features with Siri on iPhone

Siri is often the easiest way to start using accessibility features with iPhone. With Siri, you can open apps, turn many settings on or off, or use Siri for what it does best—acting as your intelligent personal assistant.

🎤 **Siri:** Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver." Learn how to ask Siri.

Siri knows when VoiceOver is on, so will often read more information back to you than appears on the screen. You can also use VoiceOver to read what Siri shows on the screen.

Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to Settings 🎛 > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.

2. To make a request, activate Siri, then interact with Siri by using the keyboard and text field.

Control voice feedback for Siri

1. Go to Settings 🎛 > Accessibility > Siri.

2. Choose Don't Speak in Silent Mode, Only Speak with Hey Siri, or Always Speak Responses.

Turn on "Hey Siri" when iPhone is covered or facing down

To allow iPhone to listen for "Hey Siri" when it's covered or facing down, go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Always Listen for "Hey Siri."

Hide apps when Siri is active

To hide the current app when you activate Siri, go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Siri, then turn off Show Apps Behind Siri.

Use accessibility shortcuts on iPhone

After you set up accessibility features, you can quickly turn them on or off with any of the methods below.

Ask Siri to turn on an accessibility feature

Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver." Learn how to ask Siri.

Triple-click the side button

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can turn accessibility features on or off by triple-clicking the side button.

- *Set up Accessibility Shortcut:* Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select the features you use the most.

- *Slow down the double-click or triple-click speed for the side button:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Side Button.

- *Use Accessibility Shortcut:* Triple-click the side button.

See Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone.

Triple-click the Home button

On an iPhone with a Home button, you can turn accessibility features on or off by triple-clicking the Home button.

- *Set up Accessibility Shortcut:* Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select the features you use the most.

- *Slow down the double-click or triple-click speed for the Home button:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Home Button.

- *Use Accessibility Shortcut:* Triple-click the Home button.

See Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone.

Use Control Center

You can also add accessibility features to Control Center and then activate them from there.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Control Center, then tap ➕ next to the accessibility features you use the most.

2. To activate the feature from Control Center, open Control Center, then tap the control.

Customize accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

You can choose different display and motion settings for certain apps, the Home Screen, and Settings.

Change the settings for an app

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Accessibility > Per-App Settings.

2. Tap Add App, then choose an app, Home Screen, or Settings.

3. Tap the app or Home Screen, then adjust the settings.

Adjust the text size when you're using an app

1. Open Control Center, then tap AA.

   (If you don't see AA, add it to Control Center—go to Settings 🔘 > Control Center, then choose Text Size).

2. Drag the slider up or down to increase or decrease the text size.

To change the text size for all apps, tap All Apps at the bottom of the screen.

Security and privacy

Use the built-in security and privacy protections of iPhone

iPhone is designed to protect your data and your privacy. Built-in security features help prevent anyone but you from accessing the data on your iPhone and in iCloud. Built-in privacy features minimize how much of your information is available to anyone but you, and you can adjust what information is shared and where you share it.

To take maximum advantage of the security and privacy features built into iPhone, follow these practices:

Set a strong passcode

Setting a passcode to unlock iPhone is the most important thing you can do to safeguard your device. See Set a passcode on iPhone.

Use Face ID or Touch ID

Face ID (supported models) or Touch ID (supported models) provides a secure and convenient way to unlock your iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps. See Set up Face ID on iPhone or Set up Touch ID on iPhone.

Turn on Find My iPhone

Find My helps you find your iPhone if it's lost or stolen and prevents anyone else from activating or using your iPhone if it's missing. See Add your iPhone to Find My.

Keep your Apple ID secure

Your Apple ID provides access to your data in iCloud and your account information for services like the App Store and Apple Music. To learn how to protect the security of your Apple ID, see Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone.

Use Sign in with Apple when it's available

To help you set up accounts, many apps and websites offer Sign in with Apple. Sign in with Apple limits the information shared about you, it conveniently uses the Apple ID you already have, and it provides the security of two-factor authentication. See Sign in with Apple on iPhone.

Let iPhone create a strong password if Sign in with Apple isn't available

For a strong password that you don't have to remember, let iPhone create it when you sign up for a service on a website or in an app. See Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone.

Use the built-in authenticator for two-factor authentication

For sites and apps that offer two-factor authentication, you can get automatically generated verification codes on iPhone without relying on SMS messages or additional apps to provide the codes. See Automatically fill in verification codes on iPhone.

Control the app data and location information you share

You can review and adjust the data you share with apps, the location information you share, and how Apple delivers advertising to you in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks.

Review the privacy practices of apps

Review the privacy practices of an app before you download it. Go to the app's product page in the App Store for a developer-reported summary of the app's privacy practices, including what data is collected. See Get apps in the App Store on iPhone. For the apps that you download, review the App Privacy Report, which shows you how apps are using the permissions you granted them and shows you their network activity (iOS 15.2 or later). See Review how apps are using the permissions you grant them.

Protect your Mail activity

Turn on Mail Privacy Protection to make it harder for senders to follow your Mail activity. See Use Mail Privacy Protection on iPhone.

Hide your personal email address

When you subscribe to iCloud+, Hide My Email allows you to generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account. You don't have to share your personal email address when filling out forms or signing up for newsletters on the web (see Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone) or when sending email (iOS 15.2 or later; see Use Hide My Email in Mail on iPhone).

Better understand the privacy of your browsing activities in Safari and help protect yourself against malicious websites

Safari helps prevent trackers from following you across websites. You can review the Privacy Report to see a summary of trackers that have been encountered and prevented by Intelligent Tracking Prevention on the current webpage you're visiting. You can also review and adjust Safari settings to keep your browsing activities private from others who use the same device, and help protect yourself from malicious websites. See Browse privately in Safari on iPhone.

Control app tracking

All apps must receive your permission before tracking you across apps and websites owned by other companies to target advertising to you or share your information with a data broker. After you grant or deny permission to an app, you can change permission later, and you can stop all apps from requesting permission.

Use the internet more privately with iCloud Private Relay

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use iCloud Private Relay (beta) to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is turned on, the traffic leaving your iPhone is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and location and network providers from collecting your browsing activity. A website or a network provider won't simultaneously know both who you are and what websites you visit. See Turn on iCloud Private Relay on iPhone.

To get personalized support for these practices, go to the Apple Support website (not available in all countries or regions).

To learn more about how Apple protects your information, go to the Privacy website.

Protect your iPhone

Set a passcode on iPhone

For better security, set a passcode that needs to be entered to unlock iPhone when you turn it on or wake it. Setting a passcode also turns on data protection, which encrypts your iPhone data with 256-bit AES encryption. (Some apps may opt out of using data protection.)

Set or change the passcode

1. Go to Settings 🔘, then do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.

   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.

2. Tap Turn Passcode On or Change Passcode.

   To view options for creating a password, tap Passcode Options. The most secure options are Custom Alphanumeric Code and Custom Numeric Code.

After you set a passcode, you can use Face ID or Touch ID to unlock iPhone (depending on your model). For additional security, however, you must always enter your passcode to unlock your iPhone under the following conditions:

- You turn on or restart your iPhone.

- You haven't unlocked your iPhone for more than 48 hours.

- You haven't unlocked your iPhone with the passcode in the last 6.5 days, and you haven't unlocked it with Face ID or Touch ID in the last 4 hours.

- Your iPhone receives a remote lock command.

- There are five unsuccessful attempts to unlock your iPhone with Face ID or Touch ID.

- An attempt to use Emergency SOS is initiated (see Make emergency calls on iPhone).

- An attempt to view your Medical ID is initiated (see Create a Medical ID).

Change when iPhone automatically locks

Go to Settings ⚙ > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then set a length of time.

Erase data after 10 failed passcodes

Set iPhone to erase all information, media, and personal settings after 10 consecutive failed passcode attempts.

1. Go to Settings ⚙, then do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.

   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.

2. Turn on Erase Data.

After all data is erased, you must restore your device from a backup or set it up again as new.

Turn off the passcode

1. Go to Settings ⚙, then do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.

   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.

2. Tap Turn Passcode Off.

Reset the passcode

If you enter the wrong passcode six times in a row, you'll be locked out of your device, and you'll receive a message that says iPhone is disabled. If you can't remember your passcode, you can erase your iPhone with a computer or with recovery mode, then set a new passcode. (If you made an iCloud or computer backup before you forgot your passcode, you can restore your data and settings from the backup.)

See the Apple Support article If you forgot the passcode on your iPhone, or your iPhone is disabled.

Set up Face ID on iPhone

Use Face ID (supported models) to securely and conveniently unlock iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by simply glancing at your iPhone.

To use Face ID, you must also set up a passcode on your iPhone.

Set up Face ID or add an alternate appearance

- If you didn't set up Face ID when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings 🔘 > Face ID & Passcode > Set up Face ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- To set up an additional appearance for Face ID to recognize, go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode, tap Set Up an Alternate Appearance, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you have physical limitations, you can tap Accessibility Options during Face ID set up. When you do this, setting up facial recognition doesn't require the full range of head motion. Using Face ID is still secure, but it requires more consistency in how you look at iPhone.

Face ID also has an accessibility feature you can use if you're blind or have low vision. If you don't want Face ID to require that you look at iPhone with your eyes open, go to Settings > Accessibility, then turn off Require Attention for Face ID. This feature is automatically turned off if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone. See Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone.

Use Face ID while wearing a face mask

On iPhone 12 models and iPhone 13 models with iOS 15.4 or later, you can use Face ID to unlock your phone while you wear a face mask (or other covering that blocks your mouth and nose).

When you turn on Unlock with Face Mask, Face ID analyzes the unique characteristics around your eyes, and it works with all of the Face ID options you turn on in Settings 🞇 > Face ID & Passcode.

Note: Face ID is most accurate when it's set up for full-face recognition only.

Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode, then do any of the following:

- *Allow Face ID to work while you wear a face mask:* Turn on Unlock with Face Mask, then follow the onscreen instructions.

  Important: If you usually wear glasses, you can improve the accuracy of Face ID by wearing a pair of transparent glasses (not sunglasses) when you turn on Unlock with Face Mask.

- *Add a pair of transparent glasses (not sunglasses) to your appearance:* Tap Add Glasses, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- *Don't allow Face ID to work while you wear a face mask:* Turn off Unlock with Face Mask.

Alternatively, you can use Apple Watch with all models of iPhone that support Face ID to unlock iPhone while you wear a face mask. See Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch.

Temporarily disable Face ID

You can temporarily prevent Face ID from unlocking your iPhone.

1. Press and hold the side button and either volume button for 2 seconds.

2. After the sliders appear, press the side button to immediately lock iPhone.

   iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.

The next time you unlock iPhone with your passcode, Face ID is enabled again.

Turn off Face ID

1. Go to Settings 🞇 > Face ID & Passcode.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Turn off Face ID for specific items only:* Turn off one or more of the options.

   - *Turn off Face ID for face masks:* Turn off Unlock with Face Mask.

   - *Turn off Face ID:* Tap Reset Face ID.

If your device is lost or stolen, you can prevent Face ID from being used to unlock your device with Find My iPhone Lost Mode. (See Locate a device in Find My on iPhone.)

For more information about Face ID, see About Face ID advanced technology.

Set up Touch ID on iPhone

Use Touch ID (supported models) to securely and conveniently unlock iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by pressing the Home button with your finger or thumb.

To use Touch ID, you must also set up a passcode on your iPhone.

Turn on fingerprint recognition

1. If you didn't turn on fingerprint recognition when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings 🎛 > Touch ID & Passcode.

2. Turn on any of the options, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you turn on iTunes & App Store, you're asked for your Apple ID password when you make your first purchase from the App Store, Apple Books, or the iTunes Store. When you make your next purchases, you're asked to use Touch ID.

Note: If you can't add a fingerprint or unlock your iPhone using Touch ID, see the Apple Support article If Touch ID isn't working.

Add a fingerprint

You can add multiple fingerprints (both of your thumbs and forefingers, for example).

1. Go to Settings 🎛 > Touch ID & Passcode.

2. Tap Add a Fingerprint.

3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Name or delete a fingerprint

1. Go to Settings 🎛 > Touch ID & Passcode.

   If you added more than one fingerprint, place a finger on the Home button to identify its print.

2. Tap the fingerprint, then enter a name (such as "Thumb") or tap Delete Fingerprint.

Turn off Touch ID

Go to Settings 🔘 > Touch ID & Passcode, then turn off one or more of the options.

Control access to information on the iPhone Lock Screen

You can easily access a few commonly used features (such as widgets, media playback controls, and Control Center) from the Lock Screen. (For security, USB connections aren't allowed when iPhone is locked.) You can control access to these items when iPhone is locked.

If you turn off Lock Screen access to a feature, you prevent someone who has your iPhone from viewing any personal information that it might contain (such as an upcoming event in the Calendar widget). However, you also lose quick access to the information yourself.

Go to Settings 🔘 > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with a Home button), then select your options.

You can turn access on or off to the following features while iPhone is locked:

- Widgets (see Add widgets on iPhone)

- Notification Center (see Change notification settings on iPhone)

- Control Center (see Use and customize Control Center on iPhone)

- Siri (see Ask Siri on iPhone)

- Replying to messages (see Send and receive text messages on iPhone)

- Home Control (see Intro to Home on iPhone)

- Wallet (see Add and use passes in Wallet on iPhone)

- Returning missed calls (see Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone)

- Connecting to a Mac, a Windows PC, or an accessory with USB (such as when you connect iPhone to your computer using USB)

  Important: If you change the default setting and allow USB connections when iPhone is locked, you disable an important security feature of your iPhone.

You can also supply medical information and emergency contacts in a Medical ID that first responders and others can view on your iPhone when it's locked. See Create a Medical ID.

Protect your accounts

Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone

Your Apple ID is the account you use to access Apple services like the App Store, Apple Music, iCloud, iMessage, FaceTime, and more. Your account includes the email address and password you use to sign in as well as the contact, payment, and security details you use across Apple services. Apple employs industry-standard practices to safeguard your Apple ID.

Best practices for maximizing the security of your Apple ID

- Don't share your Apple ID with other people, even family members. (You can name one or more people you trust as Account Recovery Contacts to help you regain access to your account if you ever get locked out.)

  To share purchases, subscriptions, a family calendar, and more without sharing Apple IDs, set up Family Sharing.

- Never provide your password, security questions, verification codes, recovery key, or any other account security details to anyone else. Apple will never ask you for this information.

- When accessing your Apple ID account page in Safari or another web browser, look for the lock icon 🔒 in the address field to verify that your session is encrypted and secure.

- When using a public computer, always sign out when your session is complete to prevent other people from accessing your account.

- Avoid phishing scams. Don't click links in suspicious email or text messages and never provide personal information on any website you aren't certain is legitimate. See the Apple Support article Recognize and avoid phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams.

- Don't use your password with other online accounts.

- Let two-factor authentication protect your account. If you create a new Apple ID on a device with iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later, your account automatically uses two-factor authentication. If you previously created an Apple ID account without two-factor authentication, turn on two-factor authentication. See Manage two-factor authentication for your Apple ID from iPhone.

Add Account Recovery Contacts

Choose one or more people you trust as Account Recovery Contacts to help you reset your Apple ID password and regain access to your account if you ever forget your password or get locked out.

Go to Settings ⚙️ > [*your name*] > Password & Security > Account Recovery, tap Add Recovery Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information, go to Settings ⚙️ > [*your name*] > Password & Security, then tap "Learn more" below Add Recovery Contact.

Add Legacy Contacts

The Digital Legacy program allows you to designate people as Legacy Contacts so they can access your Apple ID account in the event of your death (iOS 15.2 or later).

Go to Settings ⚙️ > [*your name*] > Password & Security > Legacy Contact, tap Add Legacy Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about how to share the access key with a legacy contact, how to remove a legacy contact, and how your legacy contact can request access to your account, see the Apple Support article How to add a Legacy Contact for your Apple ID. Also see the Apple Support article Data that a Legacy Contact can access.

Generate a recovery key for your account

For additional control over your account security, you have the option to generate a recovery key that helps you reset your account password or regain access to your Apple ID. A recovery key is a randomly generated 28-character code that you should keep in a safe place. You can reset your account password by either entering your recovery key or using another device already signed in with your Apple ID. To ensure you have access to your account, you are personally responsible for maintaining access to the recovery key and your trusted devices.

See the Apple Support article How to generate a recovery key.

For more information about best practices, see the Apple Support article Security and your Apple ID.

To set up or manage your Apple ID, go to the Apple ID website.

If you forgot your Apple ID or password, see the Recover your Apple ID website.

Sign in with Apple on iPhone

With Sign in with Apple, you can sign in to participating apps and websites with your Apple ID. You don't need to create and remember new passwords, and your account is protected with two-factor authentication.

Sign in with Apple is designed to respect your privacy. Apps and websites can ask only for your name and email address to set up your account, and Apple won't track you as you use them.

Set up or upgrade an account to Sign in with Apple

When a participating app or website asks you to set up or upgrade an account, do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.

2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Some apps (and websites) don't request your name and email address. In this case, you simply authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Others may ask for your name and email address to set up a personalized account. When an app asks for this information, Sign in with Apple displays your name and the personal email address from your Apple ID account for you to review.

To edit your name, tap it, then use the keyboard to make changes.

To specify an email address, do one of the following:

- *Use your personal email address:* Tap Share My Email.

  If you have multiple email addresses associated with your Apple ID, choose the address you want.

- *Hide your email address:* Tap Hide My Email.

  This option allows you to receive email from the app without sharing your personal email address. When you choose this option, Apple creates a unique, random email address for you, and any email sent from the app to this address is forwarded to your personal address.

After you review your information and choose an email option, tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Sign in to access your account

After you set up an account with an app or website using Sign in with Apple, you typically don't need to sign in to it again on your iPhone. But if you're asked to sign in (for example, after you sign out of an account), do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.

2. Review the Apple ID that appears, then tap Continue.

3. Authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model).

Change the address used to forward email

If you chose to hide your email address when you created an account and you have more than one address associated with your Apple ID, you can change the address that receives your forwarded email.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Name, Phone Numbers, Email > Forward To.

2. Choose a different email address, then tap Done.

Change Sign in with Apple settings for an app or website

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > Password and Security.

2. Tap Apps Using Your Apple ID.

3. Choose an app, then do either of the following:

   - *Turn off forwarding email:* Turn off Forward To. You won't receive any further emails from the app.

   - *Stop using Sign in with Apple:* Tap Stop Using Apple ID. You may be asked to create a new account the next time you try to sign in with the app.

Sign in with Apple also works on your other devices—iPad, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple TV, and iPod touch—where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

To sign in from an Android app, a Windows app, or any web browser, tap Sign in with Apple, then enter your Apple ID and password.

Sign in with Apple requires two-factor authentication for your Apple ID. This protects your Apple ID, your app accounts, and your app content. For information about how two-factor authentication works, see the Apple Support article Two-factor authentication for Apple ID.

For more information, see the Apple Support article What is Sign in with Apple?.

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPhone create strong passwords for many of your accounts.

iPhone stores the passwords in iCloud Keychain and fills them in for you automatically, so you don't have to memorize them.

Note: Instead of creating an account and password, use Sign in with Apple when a participating app or website invites you to set up an account. Sign in with Apple uses the Apple ID you already have, and it limits the information shared about you.

Create a strong password for a new account

1. On the new account screen for the website or app, enter a new account name.

   For supported websites and apps, iPhone suggests a unique, complex password.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Choose the suggested password:* Tap Use Strong Password.

   - *Make up your own password:* Tap Choose My Own Password.

3. To later allow iPhone to automatically fill in the password for you, tap Yes when you're asked if you want to save the password.

Note: For iPhone to create and store passwords, iCloud Keychain must be turned on. Go to Settings 🖲 > [*your name*] > iCloud > Keychain.

Automatically fill in a saved password

1. On the sign-in screen for the website or app, tap the account name field.

2. Do one of the following:

   - Tap the account suggested at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard.

   - Tap 🔑, tap Other Passwords, then tap an account.

   The password is filled in. To see the password, tap 👁.

To enter an account or password that isn't saved, tap ⌨ on the sign-in screen.

Prevent iPhone from automatically filling in passwords

Go to Settings 🅢 > Passwords > AutoFill Passwords, then turn off AutoFill Passwords.

Change weak or compromised passwords on iPhone

If you create and store your own passwords for websites and apps and any are weak (for example, they're easily guessed or used multiple times), iPhone identifies them for you automatically. iPhone can also securely monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

Change a weak or compromised password

1. Go to Settings 🅢 > Passwords > Security Recommendations.

   If an account has a weak or compromised password, a message explains the problem.

2. Tap an account.

3. Tap the Password field, then tap Copy Password, so you can paste it where it's requested—for example, when you create a new password and you're asked to enter your old password.

4. Tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.

   If the website or app allows you to upgrade to Sign in with Apple, you can take advantage of the security and convenience of that feature. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPhone to automatically create a strong password that you don't have to remember.

Note: If iPhone warns you about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain. Go to Settings 🅢 > Passwords, then swipe left on the account.

Hide a security recommendation

So that you don't have to continue reviewing a security recommendation that you're unable to address, you can hide the recommendation.

1. Go to Settings 🅢 > Passwords > Security Recommendations, then tap an account.

2. In the Security Recommendation section, tap ✕, then tap Hide.

To view the recommendation later, go to Settings > Passwords > Security Recommendations, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then tap Hidden Security Recommendations. To reshow all security recommendations, tap Reset Hidden Security Recommendations.

Turn detection of compromised passwords on or off

iPhone can monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

Go to Settings 🔘 > Passwords > Security Recommendations, then turn Detect Compromised Passwords on or off.

View your passwords and related information on iPhone

You can view your passwords and add notes related to your accounts. iPhone stores this encrypted information in Settings 🔘 > Passwords, and iCloud Keychain securely keeps it up to date across all of your approved devices.

View and copy a password

1. Do one of the following:

   - Say something like: "Show me my passwords." Learn how to ask Siri.

   - Go to Settings 🔘 > Passwords.

   - On a sign-in screen, tap 🔑.

2. Tap an account, then tap the Password field.

   To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy Password.

Add notes for an account with a password

You can securely keep notes about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Passwords, then tap an account.

2. Tap Add Notes, enter your text, then tap Done.

To view the notes later, go to Settings > Passwords, then tap the account. To update the notes, tap Edit (at the top right), then tap the Notes field.

Go to the website for the account

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Passwords, then tap an account.

2. Do one of the following:

- Tap ⊘.

- Tap the website URL, tap Copy Website, then paste the URL into the address field of your browser.

Remove an account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Go to Settings 🖲 > Passwords, then swipe left on the account.

For example, you might want to remove the account for a website or app that's no longer available.

Note: This action doesn't remove the account from the website or app where you created it.

Remove a password from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

1. Go to Settings 🖲 > Passwords, then tap an account.

2. Tap Delete Password.

Note: This action doesn't remove the password from the website or app where you created it.

Share passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone

Use AirDrop to securely share passwords with someone using an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Mac.

iCloud Keychain must be set up on your iPhone.

Send a password

To use AirDrop to share a password, the person you're sharing with must be in your Contacts. To share with someone on iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, ask them to open Control Center and allow AirDrop to receive items. To share with someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered in AirDrop in the Finder.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings 🖲 > Passwords.

2. Tap the account you want to share.

3. Tap ⬆, then tap the contact you want to send the password to.

Receive a password

To receive a password, you must be in the sender's contacts.

1. If you haven't already done so, allow AirDrop to receive items.

2. When you receive a request to accept a password from someone else, tap Accept.

The password is saved on your iPhone, where you can view it and let iPhone automatically fill it in on the sign-in screen for the account.

Make your passwords available on all your devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Use iCloud Keychain to keep your website and app passwords, credit card information, Wi-Fi network information, and other account information up to date across all of your approved devices and Mac computers. (iOS 7, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.9, or later required.) iCloud Keychain is secured with 256-bit AES encryption during storage and transmission, and its data cannot be read by Apple.

iCloud Keychain can also keep the accounts you use in Mail, Contacts, Calendar, and Messages up to date across all of your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch devices and Mac computers.

Set up iCloud Keychain

If you didn't turn on iCloud Keychain when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings 🞧 > [*your name*] > iCloud > Keychain, turn on iCloud Keychain, then follow the onscreen instructions.

When you set up iCloud Keychain, you create an iCloud Security Code, which you can use to authorize additional devices that use your iCloud Keychain. It's also used for verification so that you can perform other iCloud Keychain actions, such as recovering your iCloud Keychain if you lose all your devices.

Set up iCloud Keychain on an additional device

When you turn on iCloud Keychain on an additional device, your other devices using iCloud Keychain receive a notification requesting your approval of the additional device.

On one of your other devices, approve the additional device. Your iCloud Keychain automatically begins updating on the additional device.

To approve iCloud Keychain when you don't have access to your other devices, follow the onscreen instructions to use your iCloud Security Code.

Note: If you enter your iCloud Security Code incorrectly too many times, you can't use that iCloud Keychain. You can contact Apple Support on the Apple Support website to verify your identity and try again. After several incorrect attempts, your keychain is removed from Apple's servers, and you need to set it up again.

To learn more about iCloud Keychain, see the Apple Support article Set up iCloud Keychain.

Automatically fill in verification codes on iPhone

Some websites and apps offer two-factor authentication (also known as multifactor authentication), which helps prevent other people from accessing your accounts even if they know your passwords. Passwords are the first authentication factor, and temporary, one-time verification codes are commonly a second factor. iPhone can automatically generate these verification codes without your reliance on SMS messages or additional apps.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by scanning a QR code

If you have another device with a screen, like a computer or iPad, you can use it to display a QR code from a website or app, then use the iPhone camera to scan the code.

1. On your other device, sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.

    A QR code appears to help you set up an authenticator app.

2. On iPhone, use the camera to scan the QR code.

3. On iPhone, select your account for the website or app.

    A verification code appears below the User Name and Password fields.

4. On your other device, enter the verification code that appears on your iPhone.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by entering a setup key

If you can't scan a QR code from another screen, you can manually enter a setup key.

1. Sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.

2. Choose the option to manually use a setup key (or setup code or similar), then select and copy the setup key.

3. Go to Settings ⚙ > Passwords, then select your account for the website or app.

4. Tap Set Up Verification Code, then tap Enter Setup Key.

5. Tap the Setup Key field, tap Paste, then tap OK.

6. Tap the Verification Code field, then tap Copy Verification Code.

7. Return to the website or app, then paste the verification code where directed.

Use a verification code on a website or in an app

1. Sign in to the website or app.

2. If prompted, select the option to use an authenticator app.

3. When asked for a verification code, tap the suggestion that appears above the keyboard.

   If no suggestion appears, go to Settings ⚙ > Passwords, select your account for the website or app, tap the verification code, then tap Copy Verification Code. Return to the website or app, then paste the verification code into the field.

Automatically fill in SMS passcodes on iPhone

When you sign in to some apps and websites, a one-time SMS passcode is sent to your iPhone. As a security measure, you are required to enter the code into the app or website. iPhone can detect the passcode in Messages and display it above the keyboard.

To use the passcode, tap it.

Note: With Continuity, all the SMS/MMS messages you send and receive on iPhone can also appear on your other iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch devices and your Mac. See the Apple Support article Use Continuity to connect your Mac, iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Apple Watch.

Manage two-factor authentication for your Apple ID from iPhone

Two-factor authentication helps prevent others from accessing your Apple ID account, even if they know your Apple ID password. Two-factor authentication for Apple ID is built into iOS 9, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.11, or later.

Certain features in iOS, iPadOS, and macOS require the security of two-factor authentication, which is designed to protect your information. If you create a new Apple ID on a device with iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later, your account automatically uses two-factor authentication. If you previously created an Apple ID account without two-factor authentication, you can turn on its extra layer of security at any time.

Note: Certain account types may be ineligible for two-factor authentication at the discretion of Apple. Two-factor authentication isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of two-factor authentication for Apple ID.

For information about how two-factor authentication works, see the Apple Support article Two-factor authentication for Apple ID.

Turn on two-factor authentication

1. If your Apple ID account isn't already using two-factor authentication, go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Password & Security.

2. Tap Turn On Two-Factor Authentication, then tap Continue.

3. Enter a *trusted phone number,* a phone number where you want to receive verification codes for two-factor authentication (it can be the number for your iPhone).

   You can choose to receive the codes by text message or automated phone call.

4. Tap Next.

5. Enter the verification code sent to your trusted phone number.

   To send or resend a verification code, tap "Didn't get a verification code?"

   You won't be asked for a verification code again on your iPhone unless you sign out completely, erase your iPhone, sign in to your Apple ID account page in a web browser, or need to change your Apple ID password for security reasons.

After you turn on two-factor authentication, you have a two-week period during which you can turn it off. After that period, you can't turn off two-factor authentication. To turn it off, open your confirmation email and click the link to return to your previous security settings. Keep in mind that turning off two-factor authentication makes your account less secure and means you can't use features that require a higher level of security.

Note: If you use two-step verification and upgrade to iOS 13 or later, your account might be migrated to use two-factor authentication. See the Apple Support article Two-step verification for Apple ID.

Add another device as a trusted device

A trusted device is one that can be used to verify your identity by displaying a verification code from Apple when you sign in on a different device or browser. A trusted device must meet these minimum system requirements: iOS 9, iPadOS 13, or OS X 10.11.

1. After you turn on two-factor authentication on one device, sign in with the same Apple ID on another device.

2. When you're asked to enter a six-digit verification code, do one of the following:

   - *Obtain the verification code on your iPhone or another trusted device that's connected to the internet:* Look for a notification on that device, then tap or click Allow to make the code appear on that device. (A trusted device is an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Mac on which you've already turned on two-factor authentication and on which you're signed in with your Apple ID.)

   - *Obtain the verification at a trusted phone number:* If a trusted device isn't available, tap "Didn't get a verification code?" then choose a phone number.

   - *Obtain the verification code on a trusted device that's offline:* On a trusted iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, go to Settings > [*your name*] > Password & Security, then tap Get Verification Code. On a trusted Mac with macOS 10.15 or later, choose Apple menu > System Preferences > Apple ID > Password & Security, then click Get Verification Code. On a trusted Mac with macOS 10.14 and earlier, choose Apple menu > System Preferences > iCloud > Account Details > Security, then click Get Verification Code.

3. Enter the verification code on the new device.

    You won't be asked for a verification code again unless you sign out completely, erase your device, sign in to your Apple ID account page in a web browser, or need to change your Apple ID password for security reasons.

Add or remove a trusted phone number

When you enrolled in two-factor authentication, you had to verify one trusted phone number. You should also consider adding other phone numbers you can access, such as a home phone, or a number used by a family member or close friend.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Password & Security.

2. Tap Edit (above the list of trusted phone numbers), then do one of the following:

    - *Add a number:* Tap Add a Trusted Phone Number.

    - *Remove a number:* Tap ⊖ next to the phone number.

Trusted phone numbers don't automatically receive verification codes. If you can't access any trusted devices when setting up a new device for two-factor authentication, tap "Didn't get a verification code?" on the new device, then choose one of your trusted phone numbers to receive the verification code.

View or remove trusted devices

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*].

    A list of the devices associated with your Apple ID appears near the bottom of the screen.

2. To see if a listed device is trusted, tap it, then look for "This device is trusted and can receive Apple ID verification codes."

3. To remove a device, tap it, then tap Remove from Account.

    Removing a trusted device ensures that it can no longer display verification codes and that access to iCloud (and other Apple services on the device) is blocked until you sign in again with two-factor authentication.

Generate a password for an app that signs in to your Apple ID account

With two-factor authentication, you need an app-specific password to sign in to your Apple ID account from a third-party app or service—such as an email, contacts, or calendar app. After you generate the app-specific password, use it to sign in to your Apple ID account from the app and access the information you store in iCloud.

1. Sign in to your Apple ID account.

2. Tap Generate Password (below App-Specific Passwords).

3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After you generate your app-specific password, enter or paste it into the password field of the app as you would normally.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Using app-specific passwords.

Privacy protections on iPhone

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

You control whether third-party apps have access to information in Contacts, Photos, Calendar, and other apps.

Review or change access to information in apps

The first time an app wants to use information from another app, you receive a request with an explanation. For example, a messaging app may request access to your contacts to find friends who are using the same app. After you grant or deny access, you can change access later.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Privacy.

2. Tap a category of information, such as Calendars, Reminders, or Motion & Fitness.

The list shows the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

Review how apps are using the permissions you grant them

Go to Settings ⚙ > Privacy, then tap App Privacy Report (iOS 15.2 or later).

The App Privacy Report shows you how apps are using the permissions you granted them and shows you their network activity.
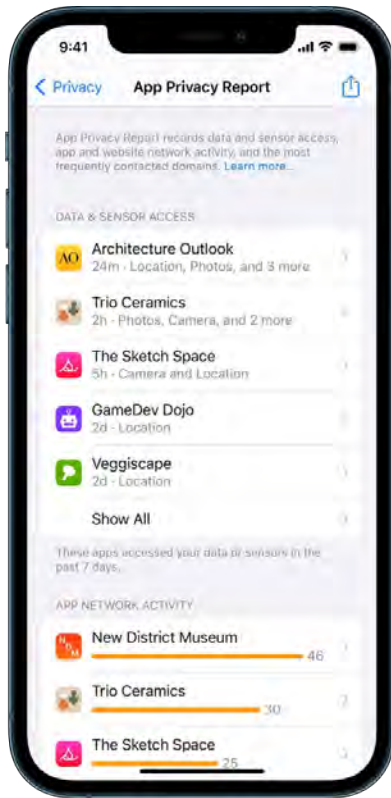
To turn off the report and delete its data, go to Settings 🔘 > Privacy > App Privacy Report, then tap Turn Off App Privacy Report. You can return to this Settings screen to turn the report on again.

Control access to hardware features on iPhone

Before apps use the camera or microphone on your iPhone, they're required to request your permission and explain why they're asking. For example, a social networking app may ask to use your camera so that you can take and upload pictures to that app. Apps are similarly required to request your permission to use various other hardware features, including Bluetooth connectivity, motion and fitness sensors, and devices on your local network.

You can review which apps have requested access to these hardware features, and you can change their access at your discretion.

Review or change access to the camera, microphone, and other hardware features

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Privacy.

2. Tap a hardware feature, such as Camera, Bluetooth, Local Network, or Microphone.

The list shows the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

Note: An orange indicator appears at the top of the screen whenever an app uses the microphone (without the camera). Whenever an app uses the camera (including when the camera and microphone are used together), a green indicator appears. Also, a message appears at the top of Control Center to inform you when an app has recently used either.

Control app tracking permissions on iPhone

All apps are required to ask your permission before tracking you or your iPhone across apps or websites owned by other companies to target advertising to you or share your information with data brokers. After you grant or deny permission to an app, you can change permission later. You can also stop all apps from requesting permission.

Review or change an app's permission to track you

1. Go to Settings 🖼️ > Privacy > Tracking.

   The list shows the apps that requested permission to track you. You can turn permission on or off for any app on the list.

2. To stop all apps from asking permission to track you, turn off Allow Apps to Request to Track (at the top of the screen).

For more information about app tracking, tap Learn More near the top of the screen.

Control the location information you share on iPhone

You control whether iPhone and apps have information about your location.

To figure out where you are when getting directions, setting up meetings, and more, Location Services uses information (when available) from GPS networks, your Bluetooth connections, your local Wi-Fi networks, and your cellular network. When an app is using Location Services, ◁ appears in the status bar.

When you set up iPhone, you're asked if you want to turn on Location Services. Afterward, you can turn Location Services on or off at any time.

The first time an app wants location data from your iPhone, you receive a request with an explanation. Some apps may make a one-time only request for your location. Other apps may ask you to share your location now and in the future. Whether you grant or deny ongoing access to your location, you can change an app's access later.

Turn on Location Services

If you didn't turn on Location Services when you first set up iPhone, go to Settings 🖼️ > Privacy > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.

Important: If you turn off Location Services, many important iPhone features stop working.

Review or change an app's ongoing access to location information

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Privacy > Location Services.

2. To review or change access settings for an app or to see its explanation for requesting Location Services, tap the app.

To allow an app to use your specific location, leave Precise Location turned on. To share only your approximate location—which may be sufficient for an app that doesn't need your exact location—turn Precise Location off.

Note: If you set the access for an app to Ask Next Time, you're asked to turn on Location Services again the next time an app tries to use it.

To understand how a third-party app uses the information it's requesting, review its terms and privacy policy. See the Apple Support article About privacy and Location Services.

Hide the map in Location Services alerts

When you allow an app to always use your location in the background, you may receive alerts about the app's use of that information. (These alerts let you change your permission, if you want to.) In the alerts, a map shows locations recently accessed by the app.

To hide the map, go to Settings ⚙ > Privacy > Location Services > Location Alerts, then turn off Show Map in Location Alerts.

With the setting off, you continue to receive location alerts, but the map isn't shown.

Review or change Location Services settings for system services

Several system services, such as location-based suggestions and location-based ads, use Location Services.

To see the status for each service, to turn Location Services on or off for each service, or to show ⇗ in the status bar when enabled system services use your location, go to Settings ⚙ > Privacy > Location Services > System Services.

Turn on iCloud Private Relay on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you.

When iCloud Private Relay is turned on, the traffic leaving your iPhone is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and location and network providers from collecting your browsing activity. A website or a network provider won't simultaneously know both who you are and what websites you visit.

You can turn off iCloud Private Relay at any time. You can turn off the feature completely for iPhone, or just turn it off for a specific Wi-Fi or cellular network.

Note: iCloud Private Relay is currently in beta.

Turn iCloud Private Relay completely on or off for iPhone

Go to Settings 🎛 > [*your name*] > iCloud > Private Relay.

Note: You need to turn on iCloud Private Relay on each device where you want to use it.

Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a Wi-Fi network

1. Go to Settings 🎛 > Wi-Fi.

2. Tap ⓘ, then turn iCloud Private Relay on or off.

If you turn off iCloud Private Relay for a Wi-Fi network on your iPhone, iCloud Private Relay is turned off for this network across all of your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a cellular network

1. Go to Settings 📱 > Cellular, then do one of the following:

   - *If your iPhone has a single line:* Tap Cellular Data Options.

   - *If your iPhone has multiple lines:* Select a line (below Cellular Plans).

2. Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off.

The network setting is specific to a physical SIM or eSim in your iPhone (eSIM not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Set the specificity of your IP address location

Go to Settings 📱 > [*your name*] > iCloud > Private Relay > IP Address Location, then choose one of the following:

- Maintain General Location (for example, to see local content in Safari)

- Use Country and Time Zone (to make your location more obscure)

iCloud Private Relay is not available in all countries or regions.

Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms or signing up for newsletters on the web or (iOS 15.2 or later) when sending email.

You can create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings 📱. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Hide My Email, then do any of the following:

- *Create a Hide My Email address:* Tap Create New Address, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- *Deactivate a Hide My Email address:* Tap an address (below Create New Address), then tap Deactivate Email Address. After you deactivate the address, it no longer forwards emails to you.

- *Change which personal email address to forward to:* Tap Forward To, then choose an email address. Options consist of addresses that are available with your Apple ID.

- *Copy a forwarding address to use elsewhere:* Tap an address (below Create New Address), touch and hold the Hide My Email section, then tap Copy. To immediately use that address elsewhere, touch and hold in a text field, then tap Paste.

You can also generate Hide My Email addresses in Safari and Mail wherever email addresses are required. See Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone and Use Hide My Email in Mail on iPhone.

Use a private network address on iPhone

To help protect your privacy, your iPhone uses a unique private network address, called a *media access control (MAC) address*, on each Wi-Fi network it joins.

If a network can't use a private address (for example, to provide parental controls or to identify your iPhone as authorized to join), you can stop using a private address for that network.

Turn a private address off for a network

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Wi-Fi, then tap ⓘ for a network.

2. Turn Private Address off.

   Important: For better privacy, leave Private Address turned on for all networks that support it. Using a private address helps reduce tracking of your iPhone across different Wi-Fi networks.

Control how Apple delivers advertising to you on iPhone

You control how Apple delivers advertising.

Ads delivered by Apple may appear in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. These ads don't access data from any other apps. In the App Store and Apple News, your search and download history may be used to serve you relevant search ads. In Apple News and Stocks, ads are served based partly on what you read or follow. This includes publishers you've enabled notifications for and the type of publishing subscription you have. The articles you read are not used to serve targeted ads to you outside these apps, and information collected about what you read is linked to a random identifier rather than your Apple ID.

Review the information Apple uses to deliver ads

Go to Settings 🔘 > Privacy > Apple Advertising > View Ad Targeting Information.

The information is used by Apple to deliver more relevant ads in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. Your personal data isn't provided to other parties.

Turn personalized ads on or off

Go to Settings 🔘 > Privacy > Apple Advertising, then turn Personalized Ads on or off.

Note: Turning off personalized ads limits Apple's ability to deliver relevant ads to you. It may not reduce the number of ads you receive.

Learn more about privacy and Apple's advertising platform

Go to Settings ⚙ > Privacy > Apple Advertising > About Advertising & Privacy.

Restart, update, reset, and restore

Turn iPhone on or off

Use the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model) to turn on iPhone. You can use the top button (along with either volume button on some models) or Settings ⚙ to turn off iPhone.

If your iPhone isn't working as expected, you can try restarting it by turning it off, then turning it back on. If turning it off and on doesn't fix the issue, try forcing it to restart.

Turn on iPhone

Press and hold the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model) until the Apple logo appears.

Turn off iPhone

- *iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the Power Off slider.

- *iPhone with the Home button:* Press and hold the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model), then drag the slider.
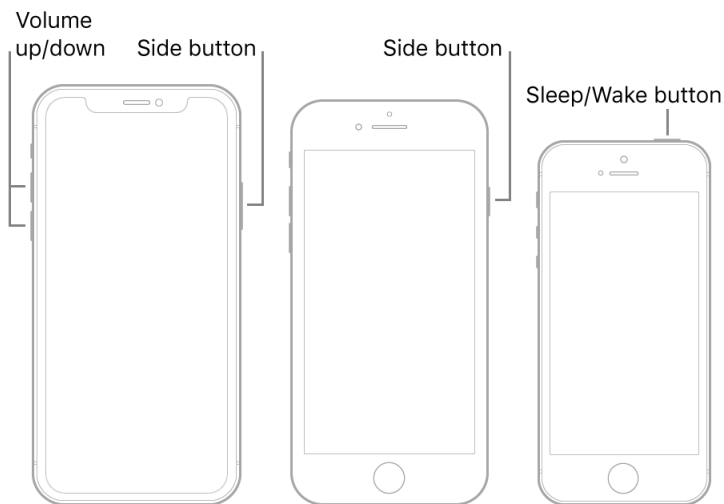
- *All models:* Go to Settings ⚙ > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.

Force restart iPhone

If iPhone isn't responding, and you can't turn it off then on, try forcing it to restart.

Note: The steps to force restart iPhone depend on the model. To learn what model you have, see the Apple Support article Identify your iPhone model.

If iPhone doesn't restart after you try these steps, see the Apple Support article If your iPhone won't turn on or is frozen. Or if your iPhone isn't working as expected after you restart it, see the iPhone Support website.

Force restart an iPhone with Face ID

To force restart iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XR, or any iPhone 11, iPhone 12, or iPhone 13 model, do the following:

Press and quickly release the volume up button, press and quickly release the volume down button, then press and hold the side button. When the Apple logo appears, release the button.
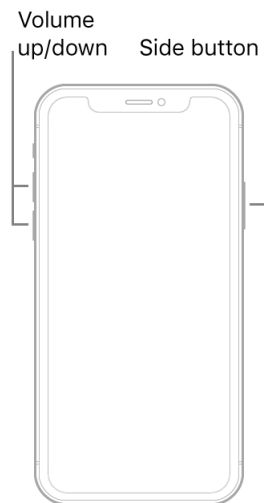
Force restart iPhone 8 or iPhone SE (2nd generation and later)

Press and quickly release the volume up button, press and quickly release the volume down button, then press and hold the side button. When the Apple logo appears, release the button.

Volume up/down   Side button
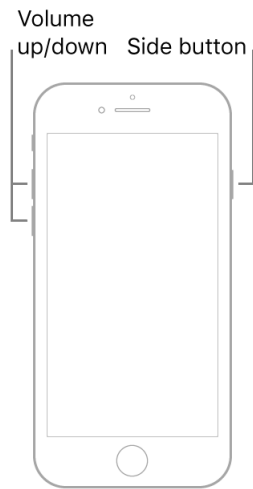
Force restart iPhone 7

Press and hold both the volume down button and the Sleep/Wake button at the same time. When the Apple logo appears, release both buttons.

Volume down   Sleep/Wake button
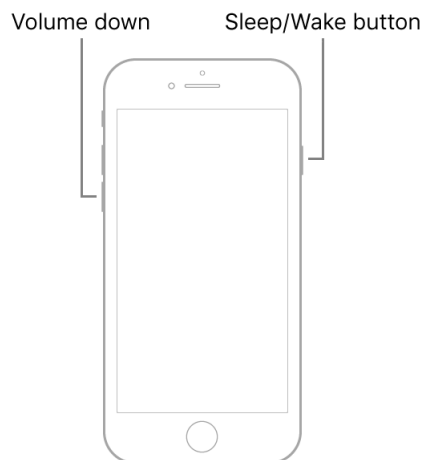
Force restart iPhone 6s or iPhone SE (1st generation)

Press and hold both the Sleep/Wake button and the Home button at the same time. When the Apple logo appears, release both buttons.

Sleep/Wake button   Sleep/Wake button

Home button   Home button
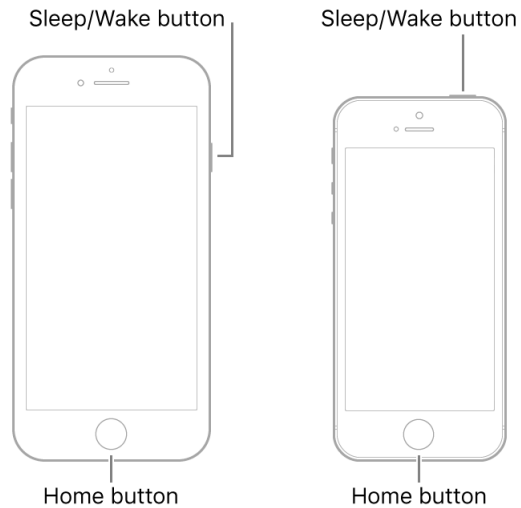
Update iOS on iPhone

When you update to the latest version of iOS, your data and settings remain unchanged.

Before you update, set up iPhone to back up automatically, or back up your device manually.

Update iPhone automatically

If you didn't turn on automatic updates when you first set up your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > General > Software Update > Automatic Updates.

2. Turn on Download iOS Updates and Install iOS Updates.

When an update is available, iPhone downloads and installs the update overnight while charging and connected to Wi-Fi. You're notified before an update is installed.

Update iPhone manually

At any time, you can check for and install software updates.

Go to Settings 🔘 > General > Software Update.

The screen shows the currently installed version of iOS and whether an update is available.

To turn off automatic updates, go to Settings > General > Software Update > Automatic Updates.

Update using your computer

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

2. Do one of the following:

    - *In the Finder sidebar on your Mac:* Select your iPhone, then click General at the top of the window.

      To use the Finder to update your iPhone, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, use iTunes to update your iPhone.

    - *In the iTunes app on your Windows PC:* Click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window, then click Summary.

3. Click Check for Update.

4. To install an available update, click Update.

See the Apple Support articles Update to the latest iOS and If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Back up iPhone

You can back up iPhone using iCloud or your computer. To decide which method is best for you, see About backups for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

💡 **Tip:** If you replace your iPhone, you can use its backup to transfer your information to the new device. See Restore all content to iPhone from a backup.

Back up iPhone using iCloud

1. Go to Settings 🖼️ > [*your name*] > iCloud > iCloud Backup.

2. Turn on iCloud Backup.

   iCloud automatically backs up your iPhone daily when iPhone is connected to power, locked, and connected to Wi-Fi.

   Note: On models that support 5G, your carrier may give you the option to back up iPhone using your cellular network. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > iCloud Backup, then turn on or off Backup Over Cellular.

3. To perform a manual backup, tap Back Up Now.

To view your iCloud backups, go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud > Manage Storage > Backups. To delete a backup, choose a backup from the list, then tap Delete Backup.

Note: If you turn on an iCloud feature (such as iCloud Photos or Contacts) in Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, its information is stored in iCloud. Because the information is automatically kept up to date on all your devices, it's not included in your iCloud backup. (See the Apple Support article What does iCloud back up?)

Back up iPhone using your Mac

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

2. In the Finder sidebar on your Mac, select your iPhone.

   To use the Finder to back up iPhone, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, use iTunes to back up iPhone.

3. At the top of the Finder window, click General.

4. Select "Back up all of the data on your iPhone to this Mac."

5. To encrypt your backup data and protect it with a password, select "Encrypt local backup."

6. Click Back Up Now.

Note: You can also connect iPhone to your computer wirelessly if you set up Wi-Fi syncing.

Back up iPhone using your Windows PC

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

2. In the iTunes app on your PC, click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window.

3. Click Summary.

4. Click Back Up Now (below Backups).

5. To encrypt your backups, select "Encrypt local backup," type a password, then click Set Password.

To see the backups stored on your computer, choose Edit > Preferences, then click Devices. Encrypted backups have a lock icon in the list of backups.

Note: You can also connect iPhone to your computer wirelessly if you set up Wi-Fi syncing.

Return iPhone settings to their defaults

You can return settings to their defaults without erasing your content.

Draft

If you want to save your settings, back up iPhone before returning them to their defaults. For example, if you're trying to solve a problem but returning settings to their defaults doesn't help, you might want to restore your previous settings from a backup.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone > Reset.

2. Choose an option:

   WARNING: If you choose the Erase All Content and Settings option, all of your content is removed. See Erase iPhone.

   - *Reset All Settings:* All settings—including network settings, the keyboard dictionary, the Home Screen layout, location settings, privacy settings, and Apple Pay cards—are removed or reset to their defaults. No data or media are deleted.

   - *Reset Network Settings:* All network settings are removed. In addition, the device name assigned in Settings > General > About is reset to "iPhone," and manually trusted certificates (such as for websites) are changed to untrusted.

     Cellular data roaming may also be turned off. (See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.)

     When you reset network settings, previously used networks and VPN settings that weren't installed by a configuration profile or mobile device management (MDM) are removed. Wi-Fi is turned off and then back on, disconnecting you from any network you're on. The Wi-Fi and Ask to Join Networks settings remain turned on.

     To remove VPN settings installed by a configuration profile, go to Settings > General > Profiles & Device Management, select the configuration profile, then tap Remove Profile. This also removes other settings and accounts provided by the profile. See Install or remove configuration profiles on iPhone in this guide.

     To remove network settings installed by MDM, go to Settings > General > Profiles & Device Management, select the management, then tap Remove Management. This also removes other settings and certificates provided by MDM. See "Mobile device management (MDM)" in the iOS Deployment Reference.

   - *Reset Keyboard Dictionary:* You add words to the keyboard dictionary by rejecting words iPhone suggests as you type. Resetting the keyboard dictionary erases only the words you've added.

   - *Reset Home Screen Layout:* Returns the built-in apps to their original layout on the Home Screen.

   - *Reset Location & Privacy:* Resets the location services and privacy settings to their defaults.

If you want to completely erase your iPhone, see Wipe all content and settings from iPhone. If you want or need to use a computer to erase your iPhone, see Use a computer to wipe all content and settings from iPhone.

Restore all content to iPhone from a backup

You can restore content, settings, and apps from a backup to a new or newly erased iPhone.

Important: You must first create a backup of your iPhone. See Back up iPhone.

Restore iPhone from an iCloud backup

1. Turn on a new or newly erased iPhone.

2. Follow the online instructions to choose a language and region.

3. Tap Set Up Manually.

4. Tap Restore from iCloud Backup, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You're asked for your Apple ID. If you've forgotten your Apple ID, see the Recover your Apple ID website.

Restore iPhone from a computer backup

1. Using USB, connect a new or newly erased iPhone to the computer containing your backup.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *In the Finder sidebar on your Mac:* Select your iPhone, then click Trust.

     To use the Finder to restore iPhone from a backup, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, use iTunes to restore from a backup.

   - *In the iTunes app on a Windows PC:* If you have multiple devices connected to your PC, click the device icon near the top left of the iTunes window, then select your new or newly erased iPhone from the list.

3. On the welcome screen, click "Restore from this backup," choose your backup from the list, then click Continue.

If your backup is encrypted, you must enter the password before restoring your files and settings.

See the Apple Support articles Restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch from a backup and If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Restore purchased and deleted items to iPhone

You can redownload items purchased from the App Store, Book Store, Apple TV app, and iTunes Store without repurchasing them. If you're part of a Family Sharing group, you can download items purchased by other family members, too. To restore purchases that aren't on your iPhone, see the following Apple Support articles:

- Redownload apps and games from Apple

- Redownload books and audiobooks

- Redownload TV shows and movies that you purchased

- Redownload music

You can also recover recently deleted email, photos, notes, and voice memos.

Sell or give away your iPhone

Before you sell or give away your iPhone, see the Apple Support article What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, and be sure to perform the following tasks:

- If you paired an Apple Watch with your iPhone, unpair your Apple Watch. (See the Apple Support article Unpair and erase your Apple Watch.)

- Back up iPhone. If you replace one iPhone with another, you can use the setup assistant to restore the backup to your new iPhone.

  If you're replacing your iPhone with another one you have on hand, you can use extra free storage in iCloud to move your apps and data from one iPhone to another. Go to Settings 🔧 > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone > Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- Sign out of iCloud and the iTunes & App Store. Go to Settings > *[your name]*, scroll down, tap Sign Out, enter your Apple ID password, then tap Turn Off.

- Erase all content and settings that contain personal information. If you previously turned on Find My for your iPhone, Activation Lock is removed when you erase iPhone, making it ready for a new owner.

Erase iPhone

When you delete data, it's no longer accessible through the iPhone interface, but it isn't erased from iPhone storage. To remove all of your content and settings from storage, erase iPhone. For example, erase iPhone before you sell it or give it away. If you want to save your content and settings, back up iPhone before erasing it.

You can erase iPhone from Settings 🔧. If you're unable to open Settings, you can use a computer to erase iPhone.

Wipe all content and settings from iPhone

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.

   If you're erasing your iPhone because you're replacing it with a new iPhone that you have on hand, you can use extra free storage in iCloud to move your apps and data to the new device. Tap Get Started, follow the onscreen instructions, then return to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.

2. Tap Erase All Content and Settings.

When iPhone restarts with all content and settings erased, you have the option to set up iPhone as new or restore it from a backup. See Turn on and set up iPhone.

Note: If you're asked to enter your passcode and you've forgotten it, see Reset the passcode. If you're asked to enter your Apple ID password and you've forgotten it, see the Recover your Apple ID website.

Use a computer to wipe all content and settings from iPhone

You can use a Mac or Windows PC to erase all data and settings from your iPhone, restore iPhone to factory settings, and install the latest version of iOS. For example, if you can't open Settings ⚙️ on iPhone, you can use this approach to restore iPhone to factory settings.

Before iPhone is erased, you have the option to back it up. If you make a backup, you can use the backup to restore your data and settings on your iPhone or on a new device. See Restore iPhone from a computer backup.

1. Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *In the Finder sidebar on your Mac:* Select your iPhone, click General at the top of the window, then click Restore iPhone.

     To use the Finder to restore iPhone to factory settings, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, use iTunes to restore iPhone.

   - *In the iTunes app on a Windows PC:* Click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then click Restore iPhone.

3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

See the Apple Support article If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Install or remove configuration profiles on iPhone

Configuration profiles define settings for using iPhone with corporate or school networks or accounts. You might be asked to install a configuration profile that was sent to you in an email, or one that is downloaded from a webpage. You're asked for permission to install the profile and, when you open the file, information about what it contains is displayed. You can see the profiles you have installed in Settings 🔘 > General > Profiles & Device Management. If you delete a profile, all of the settings, apps, and data associated with the profile are also deleted.

Safety, handling, and support

Important safety information for iPhone

⚠️ **WARNING:** Failure to follow these safety instructions could result in fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPhone or other property. Read all the safety information below before using iPhone.

Handling Handle iPhone with care. It is made of metal, glass, and plastic and has sensitive electronic components inside. iPhone or its battery can be damaged if dropped, burned, punctured, or crushed, or if it comes in contact with liquid. If you suspect damage to iPhone or the battery, discontinue use of iPhone, as it may cause overheating or injury. Don't use iPhone with cracked glass, as it may cause injury. If you're concerned about scratching the surface of iPhone, consider using a case or cover.

Repairing iPhone should only be serviced by a trained technician. Disassembling iPhone may damage it, result in loss of splash and water resistance (supported models), or cause injury to you. If iPhone is damaged or malfunctions, contact Apple, an Apple Authorized Service Provider, or an Independent Repair Provider using genuine Apple parts. Repairs performed by untrained individuals or using non-genuine Apple parts may affect the safety and functionality of the device. You can find more information about repairs and service at the iPhone Repair website.

Battery To avoid battery damage, which could cause overheating, fire, and injury, the iPhone battery should only be replaced by a trained technician. Batteries should be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste and according to your local environmental laws and guidelines. For information about battery service and recycling, see the Battery Service and Recycling website.

Lasers The proximity sensor in iPhone 7 and later, the TrueDepth camera system, and the LiDAR Scanner contain one or more lasers. These laser systems may be disabled for safety reasons if the device is damaged or malfunctions. If you receive a notification on your iPhone that the laser system is disabled, you should always have it repaired by Apple or an authorized service provider. Improper repair, modification, or use of non-genuine Apple components in the laser systems may prevent the safety mechanisms from functioning properly, and could cause hazardous exposure and injury to eyes or skin.

Distraction Using iPhone in some circumstances may distract you and might cause a dangerous situation (for example, avoid using headphones while riding a bicycle and avoid typing a text message while driving a car). Observe rules that prohibit or restrict the use of mobile devices or headphones. For more about safety while driving, see Stay focused while driving with iPhone.

Navigation Maps depends on data services. These data services are subject to change and may not be available in all countries or regions, resulting in maps and location-based information that may be unavailable, inaccurate, or incomplete. Compare the information provided in Maps to your surroundings. Use common sense when navigating. Always observe current road conditions and posted signs to resolve any discrepancies. Some Maps features require Location Services.

Charging To charge iPhone, do any of the following:

- Charge the iPhone battery using the charging cable (included) and an Apple USB power adapter (sold separately).

- Place iPhone face up on MagSafe Charger or MagSafe Duo Charger (connected to Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or other compatible power adapter) or on a Qi-certified charger. (Supported on iPhone 8 and later; MagSafe Charger, MagSafe Duo Charger, power adapters, and Qi-certified chargers are sold separately.)

- Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

You can also charge iPhone with "Made for iPhone" or other third-party cables and power adapters that are compliant with USB 2.0 or later and with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. Other adapters may not meet applicable safety standards, and charging with such adapters could pose a risk of death or injury.

Using damaged cables or chargers, or charging when moisture is present, can cause fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPhone or other property. When you use the charging cable (included) or a wireless charger (sold separately) to charge iPhone, make sure its USB connector is fully inserted into a compatible power adapter before you plug the adapter into a power outlet. It's important to keep iPhone, the charging cable, the power adapter, and any wireless charger in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. When using a wireless charger, remove metallic cases and avoid placing metallic foreign objects on the charger (for example, keys, coins, batteries, or jewelry), as they may become warm or interfere with charging.

Charging cable and connector Avoid prolonged skin contact with the charging cable and connector when the charging cable is connected to a power source because it may cause discomfort or injury. Sleeping or sitting on the charging cable or connector should be avoided.

Prolonged heat exposure iPhone and Apple USB power adapters (sold separately) comply with required surface temperature limits defined by applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. However, even within these limits, sustained contact with warm surfaces for long periods of time may cause discomfort or injury. Use common sense to avoid situations where your skin is in contact with a device, its power adapter, or a wireless charger when it's operating or connected to a power source for long periods of time. For example, don't sleep on a device, power adapter, or wireless charger, or place them under a blanket, pillow, or your body, when it's connected to a power source. Keep your iPhone, the power adapter, and any wireless charger in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. Take special care if you have a physical condition that affects your ability to detect heat against the body.

USB power adapter (sold separately) To operate an Apple USB power adapter safely and reduce the possibility of heat-related injury or damage, plug the power adapter directly into a power outlet. Don't use the power adapter in wet locations, such as near a sink, bathtub, or shower stall, and don't connect or disconnect the power adapter with wet hands. Stop using the power adapter and any cables if any of the following conditions exist:

- The power adapter plug or prongs are damaged.

- The charge cable becomes frayed or otherwise damaged.

- The power adapter is exposed to excessive moisture, or liquid is spilled into the power adapter.

- The power adapter has been dropped, and its enclosure is damaged.

Apple 20W USB-C power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase

- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V

- *Output Voltage/Current:* 9 VDC/2.2A

- *Minimum Power Output:* 20W

- *Output Port:* USB-C

Apple 18W USB-C power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase

- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V

- *Output voltage:* 5V/3A or 9V/2A

- *Output Port:* USB-C

Apple 5W USB power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase

- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V

- *Output voltage:* 5V/1A

- *Output Port:* USB

Hearing loss Listening to sound at high volumes may damage your hearing. Background noise, as well as continued exposure to high volume levels, can make sounds seem quieter than they actually are. Turn on audio playback and check the volume before inserting anything in your ear. For information about how to set a maximum volume limit, see Use headphone audio level features on iPhone. For more information about hearing loss, see the Sound and Hearing website.

⚠ **WARNING:** To prevent possible hearing damage, do not listen at high volume levels for long periods.

Radio frequency exposure iPhone uses radio signals to connect to wireless networks. For information about radio frequency (RF) energy resulting from radio signals, and steps you can take to minimize exposure, go to Settings 🔘 > General > Legal & Regulatory > RF Exposure, or see the RF Exposure website.

Radio frequency interference Observe signs and notices that prohibit or restrict the use of electronic devices. Although iPhone is designed, tested, and manufactured to comply with regulations governing radio frequency emissions, such emissions from iPhone can negatively affect the operation of other electronic equipment, causing them to malfunction. When use is prohibited, such as while traveling in aircraft, or when asked to do so by authorities, turn off iPhone, or use airplane mode or Settings ⚙ > Wi-Fi and Settings > Bluetooth to turn off the iPhone wireless transmitters.

Medical device interference iPhone and MagSafe accessories contain magnets as well as components and/or radios that emit electromagnetic fields. These magnets and electromagnetic fields might interfere with medical devices.

Consult your physician and medical device manufacturer for information specific to your medical device and whether you need to maintain a safe distance of separation between your medical device and iPhone and MagSafe accessories. Manufacturers often provide recommendations on the safe use of their devices around wireless or magnetic products to prevent possible interference. If you suspect iPhone and MagSafe accessories are interfering with your medical device, stop using these products.

Medical devices such as implanted pacemakers and defibrillators may contain sensors that respond to magnets and radios when in close contact. To avoid any potential interactions with these devices, keep your MagSafe compatible iPhone models and MagSafe accessories a safe distance away from your device (more than 6 inches/15 cm, or more than 12 inches/30 cm while wirelessly charging, but consult with your physician and your device manufacturer for specific guidelines).

Not a medical device iPhone is not a medical device and should not be used as a substitute for professional medical judgment. It is not designed or intended for use in the diagnosis of disease or other conditions, or in the cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of any condition or disease. Please consult your healthcare provider prior to making any decisions related to your health.

Medical conditions If you have any medical condition or experience symptoms that you believe could be affected by iPhone or flashing lights (for example, seizures, blackouts, eyestrain, or headaches), consult with your physician prior to using iPhone.

Explosive and other atmospheric conditions Charging or using iPhone in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as areas where the air contains high levels of flammable chemicals, vapors, or particles (such as grain, dust, or metal powders), may be hazardous. Exposing iPhone to environments having high concentrations of industrial chemicals, including near evaporating liquified gasses such as helium, may damage or impair iPhone functionality. Obey all signs and instructions.

Repetitive motion When you perform repetitive activities such as typing, swiping, or playing games on iPhone, you may experience discomfort in your hands, arms, wrists, shoulders, neck, or other parts of your body. If you experience discomfort, stop using iPhone and consult a physician.

High-consequence activities This device is not intended for use where the failure of the device could lead to death, personal injury, or severe environmental damage.

Choking hazard Some iPhone accessories may present a choking hazard to small children. Keep these accessories away from small children.

Important handling information for iPhone

Cleaning Clean iPhone immediately if it comes in contact with anything that may cause stains, or other damage—for example, dirt or sand, ink, makeup, soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, or lotions. To clean:

- Disconnect all cables, then do one of the following to turn off iPhone:

  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the top slider.

  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model), then drag the slider.

  - *All models:* Go to Settings ⚙ > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.

- Use a soft, slightly damp, lint-free cloth—for example, a lens cloth.

- Avoid getting moisture in openings.

- Don't use cleaning products or compressed air.

iPhone has a fingerprint-resistant oleophobic (oil-repellant) coating. This coating wears over time with normal usage. Cleaning products and abrasive materials will further diminish the coating and may scratch iPhone.

Exposure to liquid and dust If liquid splashes on iPhone or dust gets on it, wipe it off with a soft, lint-free cloth (for example, a lens cloth) and ensure that your iPhone is dry and free of dust before opening the SIM tray. Minimize exposing iPhone to soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, and any liquids—for example, salt water, soapy water, pool water, perfume, insect repellent, lotion, sunscreen, oil, adhesive remover, hair dye, and solvents. If iPhone comes into contact with any of these substances, follow the instructions above in the Cleaning section.

Supported models are splash, water, and dust resistant and were tested under controlled laboratory conditions with a rating of either IP68 or IP67 under IEC standard 60529. Splash, water, and dust resistance are not permanent conditions and resistance might decrease as a result of normal wear. Liquid damage not covered under warranty. See the Apple Support article About splash, water, and dust resistance of iPhone 7 and later. To prevent liquid damage on iPhone, avoid the following:

- Swimming or bathing with iPhone

- Exposing iPhone to pressurized water or high velocity water, such as when showering, water skiing, wake boarding, surfing, jet skiing, and so on

- Using iPhone in a sauna or steam room

- Intentionally submerging iPhone in water

- Operating iPhone outside the suggested temperature ranges or in extremely humid conditions

- Dropping iPhone or subjecting it to other impacts

- Disassembling iPhone, including removing screws

If your iPhone has been exposed to liquid, unplug all cables and do not charge your device until it's completely dry. Using accessories or charging when wet may damage your iPhone. Allow at least 5 hours before charging or connecting a Lightning accessory.

To dry iPhone, tap it gently against your hand with the Lightning connector facing down to remove excess liquid. Leave the device in a dry area with sufficient airflow. Placing the device in front of a fan blowing cool air directly into the Lightning connector may help the drying process.

Do not dry your iPhone using an external heat source or insert a foreign object into the Lightning connector such as a cotton swab or a paper towel.

Using connectors, ports, and buttons Never force a connector into a port or apply excessive pressure to a button, because this may cause damage that is not covered under the warranty. If the connector and port don't join with reasonable ease, they probably don't match. Check for obstructions and make sure that the connector matches the port and that you have positioned the connector correctly in relation to the port.

Lightning to USB Cable or USB-C to Lightning Cable Discoloration of the Lightning connector after regular use is normal. Dirt, debris, and exposure to moisture may cause discoloration. If your Lightning cable or connector becomes warm during use or iPhone won't charge or sync, disconnect it from your computer or power adapter and clean the Lightning connector with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth. Do not use liquids or cleaning products when cleaning the Lightning connector.

Certain usage patterns can contribute to the fraying or breaking of cables. The included cable, like any other metal wire or cable, is subject to becoming weak or brittle if repeatedly bent in the same spot. Aim for gentle curves instead of angles in the cable. Regularly inspect the cable and connector for any kinks, breaks, bends, or other damage. Should you find any such damage, discontinue use of the cable.

Operating temperature iPhone is designed to work in ambient temperatures between 32° and 95° F (0° and 35° C) and stored in temperatures between -4° and 113° F (-20° and 45° C). iPhone can be damaged and battery life shortened if stored or operated outside of these temperature ranges. Avoid exposing iPhone to dramatic changes in temperature or humidity. When you're using iPhone or charging the battery, it is normal for iPhone to get warm.

If the interior temperature of iPhone exceeds normal operating temperatures (for example, in a hot car or in direct sunlight for extended periods of time), you may experience the following as it attempts to regulate its temperature:

- iPhone stops charging.

- The screen dims.

- A temperature warning screen appears.

- Some apps may close.

Important: You may not be able to use iPhone while the temperature warning screen is displayed. If iPhone can't regulate its internal temperature, it goes into deep sleep mode until it cools. Move iPhone to a cooler location out of direct sunlight and wait a few minutes before trying to use iPhone again.

See the Apple Support article Keeping iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch within acceptable operating temperatures.

Find more resources for iPhone software and service

Refer to the following resources to get more iPhone-related safety, software, and service information.

To learn about	Do this
Using iPhone safely	See Important safety information for iPhone.
iPhone service and support, tips, forums, and Apple software downloads	See the iPhone Support website.
Service and support from your carrier	Contact your carrier or go to your carrier's website.
The latest information about iPhone	See the iPhone website.
Getting personalized support (not available in all countries or regions)	See the Apple Support website.
Managing your Apple ID account	Sign in to your Apple ID account page.
Using iCloud	See the iCloud User Guide.
Using iTunes for Windows	See the iTunes User Guide for Windows.
Using other Apple iPhone apps	See the App Store Support website.
Finding your iPhone serial number, IMEI, ICCID, or MEID	You can find your iPhone serial number, International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI), Integrated Circuit Card Identifier (ICCID), or Mobile Equipment Identifier (MEID) on the iPhone packaging. Or, on iPhone, go to Settings 🔘 > General > About. See the Apple Support article Find the serial number or IMEI on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.
Obtaining warranty service	First follow the advice in this guide, then see the iPhone Support website.
Viewing iPhone regulatory information	On iPhone, go to Settings 🔘 > General > Legal & Regulatory.
Battery service	See the Battery Service and Recycling website.

To learn about	Do this
Battery performance and health	See the iPhone Battery and Performance website.
Using iPhone in an enterprise environment	See the Apple at Work website.

FCC compliance statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications to this product not authorized by Apple could void the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) and wireless compliance and negate your authority to operate the product.

This product has demonstrated EMC compliance under conditions that included the use of compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components. It is important that you use compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components to reduce the possibility of causing interference to radios, televisions, and other electronic devices.

Responsible party (contact for FCC matters only):

Apple Inc.
One Apple Park Way, MS 911-AHW
Cupertino, CA 95014
USA

apple.com/contact

ISED Canada compliance statement

This device complies with ISED Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Operation in the band 5150–5250 MHz is only for indoor use to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'ISDE Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

La bande 5150–5250 MHz est réservée uniquement pour une utilisation à l'intérieur afin de réduire les risques de brouillage préjudiciable aux systèmes de satellites mobiles utilisant les mêmes canaux.

Ultra Wideband information

Ultra Wideband is available on iPhone 11 and later models, and availability varies by region.

When use of Ultra Wideband is prohibited in your region, such as while traveling in aircraft, Ultra Wideband can be turned off by turning on airplane mode. To turn on airplane mode, open Control Center, then tap ✈. You can also turn airplane mode on or off in Settings ⚙. When airplane mode is on, ✈ appears in the status bar.

Australia: Ultra Wideband transmitters must not be operated within a nominated distance from specified Australian radio-astronomy sites. For further information about nominated distance, please refer to the Radiocommunications (Low Interference Potential Devices) Class Licence 2015 published by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

Class 1 Laser information for iPhone

iPhone 7 and later are classified as Class 1 Laser products per IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3. These devices comply with 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11, except for conformance with IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3., as described in Laser Notice No. 56, dated May 8, 2019. Caution: These devices contain one or more lasers. Use other than as described in the user guide, repair, or disassembly may cause damage, which could result in hazardous exposure to infrared laser emissions that are not visible. This equipment should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT

Apple and the environment

At Apple, we recognize our responsibility to minimize the environmental impacts of our operations and products. See our Environment website.

Disposal and recycling information for iPhone

Apple Recycling Program (available in some countries or regions)

For free recycling of your old device, a prepaid shipping label, and instructions, see the Apple Trade In website.

Disposal and Recycling Information

The symbol above means that according to local laws and regulations your product and/or its battery shall be disposed of separately from household waste. When this product reaches its end of life, take it to a collection point designated by local authorities. The separate collection and recycling of your product and/or its battery at the time of disposal will help conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment. For information about Apple's recycling program, recycling collection points, restricted substances, and other environmental initiatives, visit apple.com/environment.

Brasil – Informações sobre descarte e reciclagem

O símbolo acima indica que este produto e/ou sua bateria não devem ser descartados no lixo doméstico. Quando decidir descartar este produto e/ou sua bateria, faça-o de acordo com as leis e diretrizes ambientais locais. Para informações sobre substâncias de uso restrito, o programa de reciclagem da Apple, pontos de coleta e telefone de informações, visite apple.com/br/environment.

Información sobre eliminación de residuos y reciclaje

El símbolo de arriba indica que este producto y/o su batería no debe desecharse con los residuos domésticos. Cuando decidas desechar este producto y/o su batería, hazlo de conformidad con las leyes y directrices ambientales locales. Para obtener información sobre el programa de reciclaje de Apple, puntos de recolección para reciclaje, sustancias restringidas y otras iniciativas ambientales, visita apple.com/mx/environment o apple.com/la/environment.

Turkey environmental information

Türkiye Cumhuriyeti: AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

Battery service

The lithium-ion battery in iPhone should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider, and must be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste. See the Battery Service and Recycling website.

Draft

Dispose of batteries according to your local environmental laws and guidelines.

China mainland battery statement

警告：不要刺破或焚烧。该电池不含水银。

Taiwan battery statement

廢電池請回收

警告：請勿戳刺或焚燒。此電池不含汞。

Draft